

Tuzla Halk Eğitimi Merkezi Müdürlüğü

Eğitim ve Kültürün Buluştuğu Yerde Buluşalım...

İNGİLİZCE ÖĞRENİYORUM (A2 SEVİYESİ)



## **INDEX A2**

1)	THERE IS / THERE ARE	1
2)	SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS	2
3)	DAYS / MONTHS / SEASONS / DIRECTIONS	4
4)	THE PREPOSITIONS OF TIME (IN / ON / AT)	7
5)	THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE	8
6)	CAN	16
7)	HAVE / HAS GOT	20
8)	THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE	23
9)	CLAUSES OF REASON	28
10)	PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE	29
11)	SIMPLE PRESENT OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS	30
12)	COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS	31
13)	ANY / SOME	33
14)	A FEW / A LITTLE	34
15)	IMPERATIVES	36
16)	THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE OF VERB TO BE	37
17)	THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE	40
18)	CLAUSES OF RESULT	46
19)	BE GOING TO FUTURE	47
20)	MAY / MIGHT	51
21)	MUCH / MANY / HOW MANY / HOW MUCH	52
22)	OBJECT PRONOUNS	54
23)	GERUNDS	55
24)	INFINITIVES	58
25)	THE PREPOSITIONS OF PLACES (IN / ON / AT)	61
26)	PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (UNDER / BEHIND / OPPOSITE / NEXT TO)	63
27)	CLAUSES OF PURPOSE	64
28)	FUTURE WILL.	65
29)	BE GOING TO OR WILL	68
30)	THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE	69
31)	ADJECTIVES	72





32) ADVERBS	75
33) AS – AS	78
34) COMPARATIVE / SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES	79
35) THE MORE / THE MORE	85
36) SO OR SUCH	86
37) PICTURE: HUMAN BODY	88
38) PICTURE: PROFESSIONS	89
39) PICTURE: SPORTS	90
40) PICTURE: TRANSPORTATION	91
41) PICTURE: FAMOUS BUILDINGS	92
42) PICTURE: ANIMALS KINGDOM	94
43) PICTURES: FOOD	95
44) PICTURES: TOOLS	96
45) PICTURE: WEATHER	97
46) POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	98
47) NEED / NEEDN'T / NEEDN'T HAVE	99
48) MUST / HAVE TO / HAS TO	101
49) THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE	103
50) PRESENT PERFECT OR SIMPLE PAST TENSE	108
51) THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE	109
52) "THE" DEFINITE ARTICLE	112
53) QUESTION TAGS	113
54) USED TO	114
55) COULD / BE ABLE TO	115
56) REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	116
57) IF CLAUSES	118
58) READING: SAPANCA OR NATURAL BEAUTY	126
59) READING: FIREMEN RESCUED A FAMILY	127
60) READING: ATATÜRK	128
61) READING: PEN FRIEND.	129
62) <b>READING: THE WRECKAGE</b>	130
63) <b>READING: THE ACCIDENTS</b>	131
64) READING: HAYDARPAŞA STATION	132
65) READING: FRIENDS	133





66) READING: TRANSPORTATION	134
67) <b>READING: ANIMALS</b>	135
68) <b>READING: EROSION</b>	136
69) READING: MANDELA, NELSON	138
70) READING: ELEPHANTS	139
71) READING: PHONE KEEPS RINGING	140
72) THE LETTERS	142
73) <b>DIALOGUES</b>	147
74) <b>PROGRESS TEST 1</b>	158
75) <b>PROGRESS TEST 2</b>	160
76) <b>PROGRESS TEST 3</b>	162
77) <b>PROGRESS TEST 4</b>	164
78) <b>PROGRESS TEST 5</b>	166
79) <b>PROGRESS TEST 6</b>	168
80) <b>PROGRESS TEST 7</b>	170
81) <b>PROGRESS TEST 8</b>	172
82) <b>PROGRESS TEST 9</b>	174
83) <b>PROGRESS TEST 10</b>	176
84) <b>PROGRESS TEST 11</b>	178
85) <b>PROGRESS TEST 12</b>	180
86) <b>PROGRESS TEST 13</b>	182
87) <b>PROGRESS TEST 14</b>	184
88) <b>PROGRESS TEST 15</b>	186
89) <b>PROGRESS TEST 16</b>	188
90) VOCABULARY 1: Word Relations	190
91) VOCABULARY 2: Word Relations	190
92) VOCABULARY 3: Word Relations	192
93) VOCABULARY 4: Word Relations	193
94) VOCABULARY 5: Opposite Verbs	194
95) VOCABULARY 6: Opposite Adjectives	195
96) VOCABULARY 7: Adjective Phrases	196
97) VOCABULARY 8: Word Relations With "Have"	197
98) VOCABULARY 9: Word Relations With "Make" and "Do"	198
99) VOCABULARY 10: Word Relations With "Say" and "Tell"	199







100) <b>INITIALS</b>	200
101) INTERJECTIONS	204
102) <b>AFFIXES</b>	206
103) PHRASAL VERBS	210
104) <b>JOKES</b>	212
105) <b>IDIOMS</b>	213
106) <b>PROVERBS</b>	242
107) CLASSIFIED IRREGULAR VERBS	.244
108) IRREGULAR VEBS	245





### **THERE IS / THERE ARE**

#### We use "there is" for singular countable nouns and uncountable nouns. We use "there are" for plural countable nouns.

Examples:

*There is a* television in the classroom. *There are* 30 students in Prep A. *Is there a* restaurant near here? *Are there many* computers in your school?

#### **EXERCISES**

## A- Complete the following sentences with "there is", "there are", "is there", "are there" as in the example.

Examples:

There are five schools in our town.

*There is a* hotel near the lake.

1)	a big dog in the garden.
2)	four rooms in our house.
3)	an envelope on your table.
4)	a good restaurant near the school?
5)	a painting on the wall?
6)	ten plates in the cupboard.
7)	many children in the swimming pool?
8)	a bus to Samsun?

#### B- Complete the following sentences. What is there in your classroom?

1) There is one door in my classroom

2)	window/s	•	
3)	student/s	•	
4)	desk/ s	·	
5)	picture/s		
6)	table/s	"	

#### C- Complete the following sentences about Turkey.

- 1) There are seven \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) There are eighty-one\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) There are two \_\_\_\_\_\_ in İstanbul.
- 4) There are 550 \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the Turkish Grand National Assembly.
- 5) There are three \_\_\_\_\_\_ around Turkey.

O Green soap is very good for your hairs.

<sup>(C)</sup> Green soap is very good for your hair.

"Hair" is an uncountable noun.



### SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS

The plural form of a noun is usually made by adding "s" to singular nouns.				
cat, cats teacher, teachers pencil, pencils				
But there are some exceptions as below.				
We add <i>es</i> after the nouns ending in "o", "ss", "sh", ch" or "x".				
potato, potatoes kiss, kisses brush, brushes watch, watches				
box, boxes torch, torches				
but some originally foreign words ending in "o" take only "s".				
piano, pianos photo, photos kimono, kimonos radio, radios				
If a noun ends in "y" following a consonant we drop the "y" and add "ies". country, countries baby, babies fly, flies but if a noun ends in "y" following vowel we add "s" only.				
donkey, donkeys monkeys day, days				
The nouns ending in "f" or "fe" we drop the "f" or "fe" and add "ves". knife, knives wolf, wolves thief, thieves wife, wives some more nouns are: life, self, calf, shelf, leaf, loaf, sheaf, half				
* Some nouns have irregular plural nouns				

# man, menmouse, micechild, childrenox, oxenlouse, licewoman, womenfoot, feetsheep, sheepgoose, geeseperson, peopletooth, teethfish, fish

#### EXERCISES

#### A- Write the plural form of the following nouns.

boy	roof	 policeman	
dress	flower	 wolf	
dish	address	 baby	
watch	leaf	 sandwich	
OX	sheep	 hotel	
girl	shelf	 policewoman	

#### **B-** Underline the nouns in these sentences and make them plural.

1) I eat an apple, a banana, and an orange everyday.	
2) The train on the tracks is going to New York.	

3) One little cat lives in the old house.

### $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$ The students are busy with studying lesson.

<sup>(C)</sup> The students are busy studying lesson.



We say "busy doing something".





C- Change the following sentences into plural	l as in the example.
Example:	
She is a policewoman.	They are policewomen.
1) The girl is from Sakarya.	
2) The door is blue.	
3) The street is very clean.	
4) The baby is in the bed.	
5) The leaf is green.	
6) The child is happy.	
7) It is a mouse.	
8) She is a clever student.	
9) I am a teacher.	
10) The man is a worker.	
11) My son is a student.	
12) He is a footballer.	
<ul> <li>12) He is a footballer.</li> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> </ul>	lar as in the example. She isn't a hardworking girl.
<b>D- Change the following sentences into singul</b> Example: They aren't hardworking girls.	
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> </ul>	
<b>D- Change the following sentences into singul</b> Example: They aren't hardworking girls.	
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> <li>5) The cats are in the tree.</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> <li>5) The cats are in the tree.</li> <li>6) The children are in the garden.</li> <li>7) The policemen are in the police station.</li> <li>8) They aren't apples. They are oranges.</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> <li>5) The cats are in the tree.</li> <li>6) The children are in the garden.</li> <li>7) The policemen are in the police station.</li> <li>8) They aren't apples. They are oranges.</li> <li>9) The knives are on the shelf.</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> <li>5) The cats are in the tree.</li> <li>6) The children are in the garden.</li> <li>7) The policemen are in the police station.</li> <li>8) They aren't apples. They are oranges.</li> <li>9) The knives are on the shelf.</li> <li>10) The wolves are in the zoo.</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> <li>5) The cats are in the tree.</li> <li>6) The children are in the garden.</li> <li>7) The policemen are in the police station.</li> <li>8) They aren't apples. They are oranges.</li> <li>9) The knives are on the shelf.</li> <li>10) The wolves are in the zoo.</li> <li>11) They aren't my books</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.
<ul> <li>D- Change the following sentences into singul Example: They aren't hardworking girls.</li> <li>1) They are good students.</li> <li>2) The watches are colourful.</li> <li>3) The sheep are in the field.</li> <li>4) Are they happy babies?</li> <li>5) The cats are in the tree.</li> <li>6) The children are in the garden.</li> <li>7) The policemen are in the police station.</li> <li>8) They aren't apples. They are oranges.</li> <li>9) The knives are on the shelf.</li> <li>10) The wolves are in the zoo.</li> </ul>	She isn't a hardworking girl.

#### **E- Place the words in the correct column.**

house engineer computer pen teacher zoo tree mouse Antalya paper airport driver hospital postman dentist

PERSON	PLACE	THING

O They don't care for dripping taps.

<sup>(C)</sup> They don't care about dripping taps.

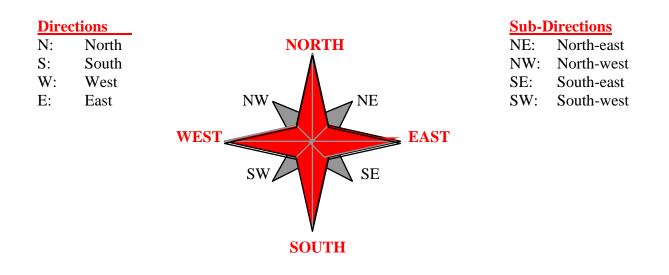


If we use "care about something", it means it is important.

## DAYS / MONTHS / SEASONS / DIRECTIONS

Days		<b>Months</b>	Months		
Monday	(Mon.)	January	(Jan).	July	(July.)
Tuesday	(Tues.)	February	(Feb.)	August	(Aug.)
Wednesday	(Wed.)	March	(Mar.)	September	(Sept.)
Thursday	(Thurs.)	April	(Apr.)	October	(Oct.)
Friday	(Fri.)	May	(May.)	November	(Nov.)
Saturday	(Sat.)	June	(June.)	December	(Dec.)
Sunday	(Sun.)				
Seasons Spring Summer Autumn Winter		Monday Tuesday Wednesd Thursday Friday		Saturday Sunday	Weekend
March April May	June ing July August	ner O	eptember ctober ovember	n Janua Febru	ary Winter

In England, the week starts on "Sunday".



 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  What is the latest month of the year?

 $\bigcirc$  What is the last month of the year?

 $\overline{\mathcal{O}}$ 

"Last" means the final one.

4



#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the sentences with days as in the examples.

#### Examples:

There are seven days in a week. Monday is the first day of the week.

1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is the first day of the week.

2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is the second day of the week.

3) \_\_\_\_\_\_is the third day of the week.

4) Thursday is the \_\_\_\_\_\_of the week.

5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is the fifth day of the week.

6) Saturday is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the week.

7) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is the seventh day of the week.

8) \_\_\_\_\_ is the day before Saturday.

9) \_\_\_\_\_is the last day of the week.

10) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is the day after Tuesday.

#### **B-** Complete the following sentences with months as in the examples.

#### Example:

January is the first month of the year. February is the second month of the year.

1) March	•
2) April	
3) May	•
4) June	•
5) July	
6) August	•
7) September	
8) October	
9) November	
10) December	
11) The sixth month of the year is	
12) The last month of the year is	
13) The first month of the year is	
14)	is the first month of Spring.
15)	_ is the last month of Autumn.

O The nurse cares about my father at the hospital.

 $\bigcirc$  The nurse cares for my father at the hospital.

"care for" means; "look after".



#### C- Look at the map and complete the following sentences as in the examples:

Example: Van is *in the east of* Turkey Samsun is *in the north of* Turkey.

- 1) İzmir \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Mersin \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Antalya \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) Istanbul \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Trabzon \_\_\_\_\_\_

   6) Hakkari \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Hakkari \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) Sinop

#### **D-** Answer the following questions.

- 1) What day is it today?
- 2) What is the first month of the year?
- 3) What are the spring months?
- 4) Where is Tunceli?
- 5) What is the second day of the week?
- 6) What month is it now?
- 7) What are the summer months?
- 8) What is the last day of the week?
- 9) What is the midday of the week?
- 10) Is March the fifth month of the year?

 $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  They have little chance to pass the exam.

They have little chance of passing the exam.



We use "chance of doing something". It means "likely".



## PREPOSITIONS OF TIME (IN / ON / AT)

9 o'clock on Sunday at 11:30 Monday 24 November midnight New Years day night Sunday Morning the moment Friday afternoon Christmas the end of June Saturday evening Saturday -to Monday in April/May... from... 2002, 1964... eight o'clock ten the morning June August the afternoon, the evening Summer Autumn Summer/Spring... ten minutes

\*But we don't use preposition after this/last/next/every.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Use "at", "on", "in" and complete the followings.

1) July	5)	_ five o'clock	9)	three days
2) Monday evening	6)	_Summer	10)	_ the Spring
3) the morning	7)	_ the Autumn	11)	_ five minutes
4) night	8)	_ weekend	12)	_ Christmas

#### B- Use "at", "on", "in" and complete the following sentences.

1) Goodbye. See you \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.

two days

- 2) I come home \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- 3) The bus is leaving \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes.
- 4) My father is going to Bayburt \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks.
- 5) I often visit my parents \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.
- 6) Where are you going \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday evening?
- 7) Let's meet \_\_\_\_\_ 8:30 this evening.
- 8) We go on holiday \_\_\_\_\_ June \_\_\_\_\_ September
- 9) The workers work \_\_\_\_\_ 8 am. \_\_\_\_ 5 pm.
- 10) The workers go on holiday \_\_\_\_\_ July.
  - $\textcircled{\times}$  The tourist changed the new T-shirt with another one.
  - <sup>(C)</sup> The tourist changed the new T-shirt for another one.
  - -8

We use "change for" for something we don't want or like.

### THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

#### Affirmative \_\_\_\_\_

I drink milk You drink milk He drinks milk She drinks milk It drinks milk We drink milk They drink milk

#### <u>Negative</u>

I don't drink milk You don't drink milk He doesn't drink milk She doesn't drink milk It doesn't drink milk We don't drink milk They don't drink milk

#### Question

Do I drink milk? Do you drink milk? Does he drink milk? Does she drink milk? Does it drink milk? Do we drink milk? Do they drink milk?

#### We use The Simple Present Tense

**A)** For habitual actions / or for the actions which take place regularly or repeatedly. Examples:

I *get up* early every day. The children *drink* milk every night.

#### **B**) For permanent states.

Examples: My father *works* in a factory. I *live* in Düzce.

#### C) For general truths.

Examples: The sun *rises* in the east and *sets* in the west. Water *boils* at 100°C. Water *freezes* at 0°C.

#### SPELLING

1) To the verbs ending in "-ss, -sh, -ch, -x and -o", we add "es" to form the third person singular.

Examples: box - boxes kiss - kisses touch - touches go - goes push - pushes

2) To the verbs ending -y following consonant, we add "ies" and drop the "y".

Examples:

carry – carries study - studies But to the verbs ending in "y", following a vowel we add only "s". Examples: play – plays say – says obey – obeys

🙁 Especially girls like pop music in Turkey.

<sup>(C)</sup> Girls especially like pop music in Turkey.



A sentence doesn't start with "especially".

/s/			"k", "p", or "t	t" sound	ls.		
	Examples: hits l		interrupts	kicks			
/1Z/		0	"sh", "ch", "z				
	Examples:						
	brushes	touches	changes	ch	ooses		
/z/	if the verb	ends in any	other sounds.				
	Examples:						
	falls	knows	grows b	oites	lends		
TIM	E EXPRESS	SIONS					
	FREQUEN	NCY ADVE	RBS				
	always				Every	hour	
	usually					morning	
	often		/			afternoon	
	sometimes					evening night	
	occasional seldom					night day	
	rarely					week	
	never					month	
		r				year	
* bef	ore the main	verbs				Sunday	
in   tł	ne mornings		at nights	on	Sunday	once	a day
	ne afternoons	5	weekends		Monday	twice	a week
th	ne evenings				Tuesday	three times	a month
sı	ummers				-	four times	a year
la	utumn / sprin	ng / winter				•••••	
	Examples:						
	-	ways gets up	early.		I never h	ave breakfast	t in bed.
	•		offee in the ev	ening	The stude	ents go to gyn	n <i>every week</i> .
	-	•	seaside <i>every</i>	-		as a shower <i>e</i>	•
	I have brea	akfast at hon	ne in the morn	ings.	They don	't watch TV	in the afternoon
	Do you pla	ay computer	games in the	evening	? They list	en to music <i>a</i>	t nights.
		-	the weekends		•	-	et on Fridays.
	•		wice a month.		-		a once a week.
	I don't go	to school on	Saturday and	Sunday	. We go or	n a holiday <i>or</i>	ice a year.

## $\ensuremath{\textcircled{\ensuremath{\Theta}}}$ I have two children. They help one another.

 $\bigcirc$  I have two children. They help each other.

If there are two people, we use "each other".

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Write the pronunciation of the following verbs for the third person singular.

eat catch	go study hang leave	meet fight	know think	fall brush
/s/	/1Z/	/z/		

#### B- Write the spelling of the following verbs for the third person singular.

make catch	fall fly	touch read	go try	do steal	study bury	carry wake	
 -S	-es		-ies				

#### C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of verbs.

- 1) Banu sometimes \_\_\_\_\_\_ to school on Sundays. (go)
- 2) I often \_\_\_\_\_\_ letters to my friends. (write)
- 3) They \_\_\_\_\_\_ the streets everyday. (clean)
- 4) The Browns \_\_\_\_\_\_ on a holiday every year. (go)
- 5) The School \_\_\_\_\_\_ at 8:30 every day. (start)
- 6) Dogs never \_\_\_\_\_ grass. (eat)
- 7) Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_\_ us a lot of homework. (give)
- 8) The students \_\_\_\_\_ English 10 hours a week. (study)
- 9) She \_\_\_\_\_\_ her lessons very hard. (study)
- 10) My wife never \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday. (forget)

O I have three children. They help each other.

☺ I have three children. They help one another.



If there are more than two people, we use "one another".

#### D- Rewrite the following sentences using "he", "she" or "it" as in the example.

Example: I never eat row meat. (It) It never eats row meat.

- 1) They go to school by bus every day. (She)
- 2) We visit the historical places in Istanbul in summers. (He)
- 3) They watch cartoons on TV after school. (She)
- 4) The shops open at 8:00 in the morning. (It)

5) Andrew and his friends go swimming at the weekends. (She)

## E- Put the following words into the correct order and make sentences. (add "s" for the third person singular)

1) go / my / to / Alanya / father / every summer.

2) usually / arrive / late / home / I / in / evenings / the.

3) my / daughter / basketball / and / son / go / at / the / course / weekend / to /.

4) TV / watch / my / in / wife / evenings / the.

5) fly / birds / the / in / south / winter / the / to /.

- 6) their / have / family / always / at / 7 o'clock / dinner.
- 7) everyday / to / drive / I / school.

8) a lot of / visit / Turkey / tourists / every year.

9) cake / my / really / wife / make / good.

10) Nuran / every year /another / travel / country/ to

11) what / mean / Turkish / word / this / in / do / ?

12) have/ my / piano / at / daughter / lessons / school

Students do a lot of spelling mistakes.

③ Students make a lot of spelling mistakes.

For mistakes, we always use "make".

#### F- Rewrite the following sentences in negative as in the example.

Example: I drive car every day. I don't drive car every day.

1) I have a shower every day.

2) Her son goes to bed at 10 o'clock.

3) Sarah speaks two languages.

4) We go shopping everyday.

5) Our teacher works hard at the weekends.

6) The students send e-mails to their friends.

7) The dog barks every night.

8) The shop opens at 7 everyday.

9) They never go fishing in the lake.

10) Cem and Can study at University.

#### **G-** Complete the sentences as in the example.

	Pop Music	Football	Watching TV	Computer Games
Margaret	$\checkmark$	X	✓	X
Tom and Bill	Х	✓	X	$\checkmark$
You				
Your friend				

Example:

Margaret likes pop music and watching TV, but she doesn't like football or computer games.

2) I \_\_\_\_

3) My friend \_\_\_\_\_

O A lot of people attend weekend courses of English at the language centre.

③ A lot of people attend weekend classes in English at the language centre.

We use "classes in subjects".

#### H- Complete the following sentences with do / does and correct form of the verb.

1)	it often	(rain) here?
2)	you always	(go) to bed late?
3)	your mother	(cook) well?
4)	they	(go) to work on foot?
5)	he	(play) football a lot?
6)	your father	(speak) English?

#### I- Give short answers to the following questions as in the example.

Example:		
Do you often visit your friends?	Yes, I do.	
1) Does your mother prepare breakfast for you?		
2) Does it rain a lot in your town?		
3) Does your father go to bed late?		
4) Do your parents take you to the cinema?		
5) Do you always wash your father's car?		
6) Do your relatives often visit you?		
7) Do you and your friend drink coke a lot?		
8) Do you go out in the evenings?		

#### Where / When / What / How often / What time / Who / How much / How many

I usually go to bed <u>at midnight</u>	(when)
When do you usually go to bed?	. ,
My parents live in Istanbul.	(where)
Where do your parents live?	
The film starts at 8: 30	(what time)
What time does the film start?	
Mr. Kaya often goes to Ankara with his friends.	(who)
Who often goes to Ankara with his friends?	
Mr. Kaya often goes to Ankara with his friends.	(who)
Who does Mr. Kaya often go to Ankara with?	
We sometimes have lunch out.	(how often)
How often do you have lunch out?	
My father drinks <u>a lot of</u> tea in the mornings	(How much)
How much tea does your father drink in the morning	ngs?
They buy <u>two</u> loaves of bread everyday.	(How many)
How many loaves of bread do they buy every day?	
George works in a company in Istanbul.	(where)
Where does George work in a company.?	
The teachers give homework every weekend.	(how often)
How often do the teachers give homework?	

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  The man came close to the boy and asked the address.

 $\bigcirc$  The man came up the boy and asked the address.



We use "come up" when we go towards someone.

J- Ask questions as in the examples above.
1) <u>My son</u> has his lunch <u>at the school cafe</u> <u>everyday</u> .
a
b
C
2) Some birds <u>always</u> fly to <u>the south</u> in winter.
a
b
3) Hüseyin drinks two glasses of milk everyday.
a
b
4) <u>I help my friend</u> at the weekends.
a b
5) <u>A lot of students go to school</u> by bus.
a
b
6) They clean the streets at night everyday.
a
b
C
d
K- Answer the following questions.
1) Where does your father work?
2) How often do you go swimming?
3) Where do the students play football?

- 4) Where do your grandparents live?
- 5) What time does your mother go to work?
- 6) How often does your father write a letter?
  - $\ensuremath{\textcircled{\ensuremath{\Theta}}}$  He never lets his family life interfere his work.
  - $\bigcirc$  He never lets his family life interfere with his work.

We use "with" after "interfere".

7) What do the students wear for school?

8) How often do you brush your teeth?
---------------------------------------

9) Who helps you with your homework?

10) Do you often go jogging in the park?

#### L- Match the following sentences.

a) Where do you sit in the class?	1) at 4:30 pm.	а	
b) How often do you watch movies?	2) in Çankaya.	b	
c) When does your school finish?	3) at the front row.	с	
d) Where do you buy clothes?	4) in Samsun.	d	
e) Do you walk to school everyday?	5) Yes, I do.	e	
f) Where do your parents live?	6) at a shop.	f	
g) Where does The President live?	7) No, I don't.	g	
h) Do you have lunch at school cafeteria?	8) at the post office.	h	
i) Does your father read newspaper everyday?	9) Yes, he does.	i	••••
j) Where do you post the letters?	10) sometimes.	j	

ī.

#### M- Use the following verbs to complete the sentences.

play	flow	take	go	grow	make	set	use	
1) The	earth.		1	ound the	e sun.			
3) Ter	ry is a n	nusiciar	. She			the d	rums in th	e school band
4) The	sun			in	the west.			
5) Bee	es			hone	ey.			
6) The	e River I	Kızılırn	1ak		in	to the B	lack Sea.	
7) Wh	0			0	computer	very we	11?	
0) M.	<b>f</b>							

8) My friend \_\_\_\_\_\_ photographs of famous people.

#### **N-** Answer the following questions.

How often do you...

a) help your mother with the housework? \_\_\_\_\_

b) watch TV in the evenings? \_\_\_\_\_\_.

c) play sports in your free time?

d) go out with your friends to the cinema at the weekends? \_\_\_\_\_\_.

e) wake up very early?

f) go to parties?

g) eat spicy food?

O They were very pleased with the invitation for the party.

<sup>(C)</sup> They were very pleased with the invitation to the party.

-<del>%</del>-

We use "invitation to party, wedding, ceremony, etc."



.

## CAN

#### We use "can" to express general ability.

Examples:

My friend *can* speak Italian. I *can* swim very well.

#### We use "can" to express general possibility.

Examples: You *can* park your car here. You *can* play football in the school yard.

#### We use "can" for giving and asking permission.

Examples: *Can* I have your dictionary, please? You *can* phone from my house.

#### We use "can" to offer something or ask people to do things.

Examples: *Can* I help you? *Can* you open the window, please?

## NOTE: We use "be able to" instead of "can". But "be able to" is only used about people not things.

Examples: I am *not able to* fly. A fish *can't* fly.

We can use "be able to" with all tenses.

Example: I will *be able to* visit my friends.

#### **EXERCISES**

### CAN NOT = CAN'T

#### A- Make true sentences using "can" or "can't" as in the examples.

Examples: A bird / fly A dog / play football

<u>A bird *can* fly.</u> A dog *can't* play football.

1) An engineer / build houses

2) A cat / jump

3) An elephant / run fast

4) A doctor / pull teeth

5) A teacher / teach English

🙁 Can you do a favour to me?

Can you do me a favour?



We use indirect object after "do".

#### B- Give short answers to the following questions as in the examples

Examples:	
Can you play football?	Yes, I can.
<i>Can</i> your father cook?	No, he can't.
1) Can your sister dance well?	
2) Can you ride a horse?	
3) Can your grandparents walk fast?	
4) Can your teacher speak Japanese?	
5) Can babies walk?	
6) Can you drive a car?	
7) Can a lion run fast?	
8) Can a dog climb the tree?	
9) Can a computer think?	
10) Can you live on an island alone?	

#### C- Write sentences according to the table as in the example.

	James	John	You	Your Friend
Speak Turkish	$\checkmark$	X		
Use computer	$\checkmark$	✓		
Run fast	Х	$\checkmark$		
Play a musical instrument	Х	X		
Iron clothes	$\checkmark$	X		
Swim well	Х	$\checkmark$		
Cook well	X	Х		
Ride a motorbike	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$		

Example:

James *can* speak Turkish, use computer, iron clothes and ride a motorbike but he *can't* run fast, play a musical instrument, swim well or cook well.

1) John \_\_\_\_\_

2) I \_\_\_\_\_

3) My friend (name)

O Many people are involved education.

 $\bigcirc$  Many people are involved in education.

"Involve" takes "in" after it, if it means taking part in something.

#### **D-** Put the words into correct order and make sentences.

- 1) Can / my friend / German / well / speak /
- 2) Alican / football / play / can /
- 3) Can / computer / use / not / father / my /
- 4) Go / my / son / to bed / can / late / Saturday nights / on /
- 5) Can / listen / you / music / to / your room / in / ? /

## We can ask questions with can using "where", "what", "who", "when", "which", "how" and "why".

Examples:	
Where can you buy books?	I <i>can</i> buy books from the bookshop.
What can a footballer do?	He <i>can</i> play football.
Who can fly a plane?	A pilot <i>can</i> fly a plane.
When can you leave your school?	I can leave at 4 o'clock.
Which can run fast? A horse or a donkey?	A horse <i>can</i> run fast.
Why can't you drive a car?	Because I haven't got a driving-licence.
How <i>can</i> I go to Samsun?	You <i>can</i> go by bus or by car.

#### E- Give true answers to the following questions as in the examples above.

2) Who can look after the babies?
3) Who can treat the patients?
4) Where can you borrow books?
5) Where can you visit the animals?
6) Where can you have a picnic?
7) What can't you do in the school?
8) What can you get from the bank?

9) What can the students do after school?

1) Who can speak English in your family?

O They live on Cyprus.

<sup>(C)</sup> They live in Cyprus.



We use "live in" before countries.



- 10) When can you go on a holiday?
- 11) When can people play snowball?
- 12) Which car can go faster? A Sahin or a Mercedes?
- 13) Which one can help you? Your teacher or your father?
- 14) How can you go to Cyprus?
- 15) Why can't you open the window?
- 16) Why can't your grandfather climb a tree?
- 17) Who can teach you how to swim?
- 18) Where can you do science experiments?
- 19) What can you catch in the lake?
- 20) How many languages can your English teacher speak?
- 21) How many kilometres can you run a day?
- 22) How many pages of book can you read a day?
- 23) How much water can you drink in a meal?
- 24) Where can people have a picnic in your town?
- 25) Who can use computer in your family?
- 26) What can a barber do for you?

#### F- Complete the sentences with the following words

- help translate speak drive get
- 1) She can \_\_\_\_\_\_ a car very fast.
- 2) The manager can \_\_\_\_\_ Italian.3) Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me with my homework?
- 4) I can \_\_\_\_\_\_ some songs into English.
- 5) When can you \_\_\_\_\_\_ a driving-licence in Turkey?

O They live in an island.

<sup>(C)</sup> They live on an island.



We use "live on" before island.



### HAVE / HAS GOT

#### **Affirmative**

I have got You have got He has got She has got It has got We have got They have got

#### Negative I haven't got

You haven't got He hasn't got She hasn't got It hasn't got We haven't got They haven't got QuestionHave I got?Have you got?Has he got?Has she got?Has it got?Have we got?Have they got?

#### Short Form

I've got You've got He's got She's got It's got We've got They've got

#### We use "have / has got" for possession.

Examples: My friend *has got* a car. *Have* you *got* a bicycle? They *haven't got* many friends in Istanbul.

#### We use "have / has got" for illnesses.

Examples: I *have got* a headache *Has* she *got* a cold? She*'s got* a toothache.

#### We use "have / has got" for descriptions.

Examples: She *has got* blue eyes and blonde hair. He's *got* a big nose and big mouth.

#### EXERCISES

#### A- Read the following paragraph and then write about your room.

Hakan has got a bed, a chair and a cupboard. He has got a table. He hasn't got a TV in his room but he's got a computer. He has got a lot of books in the bookshelf. He has got some posters on the walls. He has got a lot of CD's in the drawer.

Ι\_\_\_\_\_

O My wife has got a lot of jewelleries.

<sup>(C)</sup> My wife has got a lot of jewellery.



"Jewellery" is an uncountable noun.

## We use question words with "have / has got" such as "what", "what kind of", "who", where", "how many", "how much"

Examples: What have you got in your hand? Where have they got some relatives?

What kind of a car have they got?

Who has got an earache?

How many rooms have you got in your house?

## **B-** Complete the following sentences using the question words as in the example and answer them.

#### Example:

Who has got an umbrella?

My father has got an umbrella.

1)	have they got in their bags?	
2)	a bicycle has your friend got?	·
3)	books have you got in your library?	·
4)	has Mr. Smith got in the garage?	·
5)	has got long hair?	·
6)	_ milk have you got in the fridge?	·
7)	has she got in her room?	·
8)	have your friends got a new villa?	
9)	a telephone has your father got?	
10)	teachers have you got in your school?	
11)	bread have you got in your bag?	

#### C- Read the example and write for you and your friend.

	Tom	You	Your friend
Brothers	Х		
Sisters	2		
Pen Friend	$\checkmark$		
Computer	$\checkmark$		
Football	Х		
Mobile Phone	$\checkmark$		
Motorbike	Х		

Example:

Tom has got two sisters, a pen friend, a computer and a mobile phone. He's not got any brothers, footballs or a motorbike.

Ι\_\_\_\_\_

#### My friend\_\_\_\_\_

O My son is very keen to chocolate.

<sup>(C)</sup> My son is very keen on chocolate.



We use "keen on something".



### **D-** Complete the following sentences using "have / has got".

1) My brother	a very good job.
2) I	one brother and two sisters.
3) The dog	a long tail.
4) The director	a new car.
5) Jane and Jade	computers
6) You	a house near the lake.
7) I and my friend	a problem.
8) Sarah	a bad headache.
9) We	a lot of books in our library.
10) He	a new pen friend.
E- Give short answers to the (	questions as in the examples.
Examples:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Has she got a new came	
Have you got an umbrel	lla? (-) <u>No, I haven't</u>
1) Has your father got a cold? (	(+)
2) Have they got a TV in their 1	
3) Has your mother got bracele	
4) Has their house got a garden	
5) Have you got beautiful eyes	
6) Have Charles and David got	1
7) Have you and your friend go	1 ()
8) Has your English teacher go	t a car? (+)
F- Write questions as in the e	xample.
Example:	Has she ast a sister?
(She / sister)	Has she got a sister?
1) (your mother / car)	
2) (your friend / e-mail address	
3) (your school / computer roor	n)
4) (Cem / many friends)	
5) (Mr. and Mrs. Gül / any chile	
6) (Your parents / summer hous	se)
7) (Cenk / coin collection)	
8) (The lion / mane)	
OMy son is very keen on	eating chocolate.

We use "keen on doing something".

-**%**-

### THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

#### <u>Affirmative</u>

I am walking. You are walking. He is walking. She is walking. It is walking We are walking. They are walking.

#### <u>Negative</u>

I am not walking. You are not walking. He is not walking. She is not walking. It is not walking. We are not walking. They are not walking.

#### Question

Am I walking?I'mAre you walking?YoIs he walking?HeIs she walking?SheIs it walking?It'sAre we walking?WeAre they walking?The

#### <u>Short Form</u>

I'm You're He's She's It's We're They're

We use The Present Continuous Tense A) For actions happening now.

Examples: I *am writing* an example. It *is not raining* outside. My son *is doing* his homework.

## B) For the action happening about this time, but not necessarily at the time of speaking or during current period of time.

Examples:

He *is reading* a book by Orhan Pamuk. They *are working* on a dam project. I *am teaching* English. My friend *is studying* science at University.

#### SPELLING

 If a verb ends in a single "e", that -e drops before -ing Examples: have - having smile - smiling write - writing but if the verb ends in double "e" we add only -ing agree - agreeing see - seeing

2) If a verb of one syllable has one vowel and ends in a single consonant, the consonant is doubled.

Examples: sit – sit*ting* stop – stop*ping* cut - cut*ting* 

3) If a verb of two or more syllables has one vowel in the last syllable and ends in a single consonant, the consonant is doubled.

Examples: begin – begin*ning* travel – travel*ling* 

forget - forget*ting* 

We are reading English in the library.

<sup>(i)</sup> We are studying English in the library.

We use "study" for subjects.

23

4) We don't use the verbs which express feeling, emotions and show possession in Present Continuous tense.

like - love - want - know - prefer - understand - remember - depend - hate - forget need – believe – think – recognize – see – trust – value – smell – cost – disagree

#### TIME EXPRESSIONS

We use now, at the moment, at present, today, nowadays, these days, this week etc. in Present Continuous Tense. They generally take place at the end of the sentence but they can be used at the beginning, too.

Examples: The children are playing in the garden now. The dog is barking at the moment. I am tidying my room *today*. Julie is reading a new book *this week*.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Use the verbs in brackets and complete the sentences in Present Continuous Tense.

1) My wife \_\_\_\_\_\_ dinner in the kitchen. (prepare)

2) Nick \_\_\_\_\_\_ on a new book project. (work)

3) We are at the cafe. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ tea. (drink)

4) The students are at the disco. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ a great time (have)

the shop window. (arrange) 5) Semra and her husband \_\_\_\_\_

6) Some people \_\_\_\_\_\_ songs in the garden. (sing)

7) My friend \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the lake side. (fish)

8) Hakan \_\_\_\_\_\_ tea at the moment (make)

9) Dog \_\_\_\_\_ in its kennel (sleep)

10) The police \_\_\_\_\_\_ the thieves (look for)

#### **B-** Complete the sentences about the family as in the example.

1) Mum / in the kitchen / feed the baby.

Mum is in the kitchen. She is feeding the baby.

2) Grandpa / in his room / sleep.

3) Brother John / garage / mend the motorbike \_\_\_\_\_

- 4) Dad / in the garden / mow the grass
- 5) Sister Clara / living room / watch TV

<sup>(C)</sup> My friend is reading at Bosporus University.

<sup>(C)</sup> My friend is studying at Bosporus University.

"Studying" means; "He is a student at Bosphorus University."



#### **B-** Match the following questions.

a) Is Martin drinking coffee? 1) No. I am listening to the news. b) Are you listening to music? 2) No. they are watching TV. c) Is John playing the guitar? 3) No. it's eating a bone. d) Are you watching TV? 4) No. I'm going to school. e) Is she driving a lorry? 5) Yes, he is. f) Is it snowing outside? 6) No, it isn't. g) Are your parents sleeping? 7) No. They are cleaning the windows. h) Is it eating meat? 8) No. You can turn it off. i) Are you going to the shops? 9) No. She is driving a car. i) Are the cleaners cleaning the doors? 10) No. He is drinking coke. k) Is your mother vacuuming the carpets? 11) Because I don't like it. 1) Why aren't you studying history? 12) No. Because the power is off.

 $a.\dots \quad b.\dots \quad c.\dots \quad d.\dots \quad e.\dots \quad f.\dots \quad g.\dots \quad h.\dots \quad i.\dots \quad j.\dots \quad k.\dots \quad l.\dots$ 

#### C- Complete the questions and give short answers as in the example.

	Examp	ble:	
	Are	you playing football now?	No <u>I'm not</u>
1)		_ John and Marry sitting in the park?	Yes
2)		_ the television working?	Yes
3)		_ the children talking on the phone?	No
4)		Sandra dancing at the disco?	No
5)		_ your mother cooking breakfast at the moment?	Yes
6)		_ you and your friend playing the guitar?	No

#### D- Answer the following questions as in the example.

Example:

Are you listening to pop music or classical music? I'm listening to classical music.

- 1) Is Marry sleeping or resting in the room?
- 2) Are the students taking an examination or a quiz?
- 3) Are they crying or laughing?
- 4) Is your teacher going to the cinema or theatre?
- 5) Is he studying English or Turkish?
- 6) Are you wearing black or grey trousers?
  - $\textcircled{\circle}$  I lost my pen. I am searching it.

I lost my pen. I am searching for it.



We use "search for something".

#### E- Rewrite the question in Present Continuous Tense as in the example.

Example: What / you / buy ?

What are you buying?

1) Why / they / look for / you?	
2) Why / you / cry?	
3) Where / your aunt / go / now?	
4) When / you / go / home?	
5) Who / teach / you / English?	
6) Who / you / wait for?	
7) Where / the children / play?	
· · ·	

### F- Ask question for the underlined words.

1) The tourists are visiting the Topkap1 Palace at the moment.
a
b
2) They are opening their umbrella because it is raining
a
b
3) <u>L</u> am listening to <u>Ebru Gündeş</u> at the moment
a
b
4) My friend is reading Shakespeare this week
a

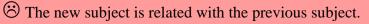
b-

#### G- Ask questions for the answers as in the example.

Example: What is Ayça cleaning?

Ayça is cleaning the table

1) 2	My father is <u>drinking tea</u> .
	•
	They are <u>studying</u> now.
3)?	I am listening to <u>Zerrin Özer</u> .
4)?	Amanda is sitting next to Martin
5)?	The teacher is explaining the subject.
6)?	Samantha is playing tennis now.
7)?	Ender is <u>cleaning the board</u> now.
8)?	They are waiting at the bus stop.
9)?	Bora is buying two cassettes.
10)?	He is organizing the festival.



 $\bigcirc$  The new subject is related to the previous subject.



We use "related to him, them, English, etc".

## H- Put the following words into correct order and rewrite them in the Present Cont. Tense.

1) who / TV / watch / the match / ? / on /

2) lake / they / swim / at present / in / the/.

3) teacher / our / wear / tie / red / today / not / a /.

4) wife / his / apple / cook / pie / kitchen / in / an /.

5) the ambulance / the patient / take / hospital / another / to /.

6) friends / play / my / cards / at / café / now /.

7) where / they / ? / tennis / play /

8) where / Ebru / Fulya / and / do / now / homework / their / ? /

9) I / children / take / the / to / cinema / the / now /

10) everybody / watch / on / football / the / match / TV /

11) where / they / picnic / a / have / now / ? /

12) who / talk / your mother / to / garden / the / in / ? /

13) Ömer / think / example / an / the / moment / at /

14) the / young boy / study / lesson / his / now /

#### I- Complete the text about Lisa and Mary. Use the present continuous.

write think make sing drink work ring ask stand listen sit have read talk

09.30 a.m. Mary is in her office. She	som	e mails andher
replies. Her friend, Lisa	some tea. She	a song.
10.00 a.m. Mary and Lisa		
seminars, but Mary	to her. She	about her new boy
friend. Theyat	the moment; they	their coffee break.
10.30 a.m. The telephone	_and that is the end of their	r break. Now it's back to work.
10.35 a.m. Mary	at her table. She	next to the window
andsome quest	ions to a customer.	

O Your house is not similar with their house.

Over Your house is not similar to their house.



We always use "your car, pen, suit, etc similar to".

## **CLAUSES OF REASON**

#### because, because of / due to / as / since / the reason for.

#### We use clauses of reason to combine sentences and to explain the reason of an event.

Examples: Since / as it got darker, children went home. She didn't go jogging because she injured her ankle. The police stopped all the cars because of snow. The police stopped all the cars due to the snow. The reason for her failure was that she couldn't understand the questions.

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Rewrite the sentences with the clause of reason in brackets.

- 1) I didn't pay the bill. I didn't have enough money. (because)
- 2) We couldn't swim. It was cold. (because of)
- 3) The school boy missed the bus. He was late. (as)
- 4) I can not hear you. There is a lot of noise. (due to)
- 5) He had a lot of girlfriends. He was very handsome. (as)
- 6) It was very foggy. The plane couldn't land. (since)
- 7) She couldn't get the job. She couldn't speak any foreign languages. (the reason why)
- 8) The footballers were very happy. They won the cup. (due to)
- 9) I can not go to the party. My parents didn't allow me. (because)
- 10) They couldn't connect the internet. The lines were very busy. (as)
- 11) They couldn't catch the plane. There was a heavy traffic. (because of)
- 12) They don't know many people here. They have just moved here. (since)
  - $\textcircled{\ensuremath{\overline{\odot}}}$  We are sure from our students' honesty.

<sup>(i)</sup> We are sure of our students' honesty.



We use "sure of him, her, Ahmet's talent etc.".

### PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE

## When we talk about future arrangements we can use Present Continuous for Future. When we use Present Continuous for Future we are sure that our arrangements will happen.

Examples: Tomorrow is my birthday. I'm having a birthday party. What are you doing tomorrow? I'm studying lesson.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Put the verbs in brackets in Present Continuous tense.

- 1) Murat \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Eskişehir next week.
- 2) We \_\_\_\_\_ (work) on Saturday.
- 3) I'd like to come to your party but I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my grandparents tomorrow.

4) They can't come to your house at 6:00. They \_\_\_\_\_ (study) lesson at that time.

5) Catherine and Mark \_\_\_\_\_\_ (get engaged) next month.

6) What time \_\_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for London tomorrow?

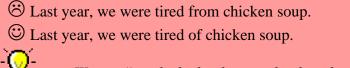
## B- This is the time table of a group of tourists in Istanbul. Ask and answer what they are doing and when they are doing it, as in the example.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Visit	Have breakfast at	Visit	Go to Galata	Go	Go shopping
Topkapı	Yellow Pavilion.	Naval	Tower to	Bosphorus	in Covered
Palace and		Museum.	watch belly	Tour by	Bazaar
Blue Mosque	Visit Dolmabahçe		dance.	boat.	
	Palace.	Visit			
		Military			
		Museum			

Example:

They are visiting Topkapı Palace and Blue Mosque on Sunday.

1)	·
2)	
3)	
4)	
5)	
6)	



We use "tired of school, tea, school uniform, etc.".

### SIMPLE PRESENT OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Put the words in brackets in the correct tense and complete the dialogue.

Dave	: What		(you / do) ?
Mary	: I		my project.
Dave	: What		(be) the project about?
Mary	: It		(be) about environment.
-	: How often		
Mary	: Once a month.	-	
Dave	: you		(love) doing projects?
	: Yes, I love it very much.		

#### **B-** Write the sentences using Present Simple or Present Continuous

1) The students / basketball / play / in the garden / at the moment /

2) I / get up / at 7 o'clock / usually / weekdays / on /

3) We / at home / have / lunch / always / but / we / a restaurant / have / lunch / today / at /

4) It / now / rain / it / a / day / rainy / . /

5) American / students / the / watch / film / an / at the moment /

#### C- Complete the following sentences in correct tense

1) I'm very tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ (want / go) bed now.

2) What \_\_\_\_\_\_ (do) in the kitchen at the moment?

3) How much \_\_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ (cost) to paint your house?

4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ you\_\_\_\_\_ (like) my new jeans?

- 5) What \_\_\_\_\_\_ (do)? He is an engineer.
- 6) What time \_\_\_\_\_\_your father \_\_\_\_\_\_ (come back) from work?
- 7) We \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema after school today.
- 8) My friend \_\_\_\_\_\_ (go) on holiday every summer.
- 9) What \_\_\_\_\_\_ (think) of this book? I think it's fantastic!

Orginal Weight W

② Yesterday we were tired with playing basketball.

-<del>\</del>\$

We use "tired with playing, running, studying, working, etc.".



### **COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS**

## Countable nouns are things we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an with them.

Examples: I have got *a lot of* English books. My son has got *a* bike.

## Uncountable nouns are things we can not count. They are generally singular. We can not use a/an with them.

Examples: I have got *some* money. There isn't *any* water in the glass.

#### We can use "some, any, many, a few" with plural countable nouns.

Examples: The rich man has got *a few* cars. There are *many* students in the class. There are *some* apples in the basket. She didn't buy *any* magazines.

#### We can use "some, any, much, a little" with uncountable nouns.

Examples: There is *some* cold water in the fridge. There isn't *any* butter on the shelf. We didn't have *much* work to do. We have *a little* rice left.

## We can not make uncountable nouns plural but to show different amounts we can use different units with them.

Examples:A loaf of bread.Two bottles of water.Two bottles of of of literation

#### We can use some nouns as both countable or uncountable nouns.

A tomato	some tomato
A potato	some potato
An egg	some egg
A noise	<i>much</i> noise
A hair	some hair

He ate two toasts.

He ate two pieces of toast.



Toast is an uncountable noun.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Make the following units plural as in the example.

Example:	
a piece of cake.	three pieces of cake.
1) A bunch of flowers	
2) A jar of honey	
3) A packet of macaroni	
4) A litre of oil	
5) A bottle of shampoo	
6) A glass of water	
7) A slice of bread	
8) A tube of toothpaste	
9) A bar of chocolate	
10) A cup of tea	
11) A bowl of soup	
12) A lump of meat	
13) A carton of orange juice	
14) A sheet of paper	
15) A bag of sugar	

#### **B-** Fill in the blanks with suitable units.

1) I drink		coke everyday.
2) There is		biscuits in her bag.
3) My son drinks		water everyday.
4) We have got		meat in the fridge.
5) There is		chalk on the table.
6) I gave my wife		_ flowers for her birthday.
7) Dilek has got		chocolate in her hand.
8) There is		yoghurt in the fridge.
9) They bought		oil yesterday.
10) I bought		matches.
11) She can drink		coke.
12) Her husband eats		bread at breakfast.
13) Some people drink		hot water when they get up.
14) I prefer	_ soup to	tea in the mornings.

O They bought a lot of new furnitures for their new house.

 $\bigcirc$  They bought a lot of new furniture for their new house.

"Furniture" is an uncountable noun.

## **ANY / SOME**

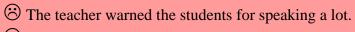
"Some" and "Any" mean "a certain number or amount". We use both of them before plural countable nouns.
Some teachers Any books.
"Any" is used with negative sentences and questions. Are there <i>any</i> students in the classroom? There aren't <i>any</i> buses to Ankara.
<b>"Some" is used with affirmative sentences.</b> There are <i>some</i> books on the table.
EXERCISES
<ul> <li>A- Change the following sentences as in the example.</li> <li>Example:</li> <li>There are <i>some</i> students in the school yard.</li> <li>(-) There aren't <i>any</i> students in the school yard.</li> <li>(?) Are there <i>any</i> students in the school yard?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>1) There are some posters on the wall.</li> <li>(?)</li> </ul>
(-) 2) There aren't any cinemas in my town. (+) (?)
(.)
<b>B- Answer the following questions as in the example.</b> Example: Are there <i>any</i> computers in your room? Yes, there is one.

No, there aren't *any* computers in my room

1) Are there any pictures on the walls in your room?

2) Are there any parks near your house?

3) Are there any cassettes in your bag?



 $\bigcirc$  The teacher warned the students against speaking a lot.

We use "warn against" for people.

## A FEW / A LITTLE

We use "a few" with plural countable nouns. It means "a small number" and it has a positive meaning. There are *a few* eggs in the fridge.

We use "a little" with uncountable nouns. It means "a small amount" and it has a positive meaning. There is *a little* water in the glass.

#### **EXERCISES**

A- Complete the following sentences using "a few", "a little".

- 1) I bought \_\_\_\_\_\_ books at the weekend.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ students are doing their homework in the classroom.

3) My father only takes \_\_\_\_\_\_ sugar with his tea.

- 4) There is only \_\_\_\_\_ jam left in the refrigerator.
- 5) There are \_\_\_\_\_\_ new words in this unit.
- 6) Terry had \_\_\_\_\_ money so he bought only \_\_\_\_\_ bars of chocolate.
- 7) I smoke only \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes a day.
- 8) I've only got \_\_\_\_\_\_ time to finish this project.
- 9) We had \_\_\_\_\_\_ guests from Amasya last week.
- 10) Did you take any photos in the village last year? Yes I took \_\_\_\_\_ but they are not clear.
- 11) Have you got any money? Yes, I've only got \_\_\_\_\_ money.
- 12) Was there any food in your bag? Yes there was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13) Hurry up! I have got \_\_\_\_\_\_ time. I must leave immediately.
- 14) There are \_\_\_\_\_\_ tourists in the hotel today.
- 15) Derya drank \_\_\_\_\_ milk last night.
- 16) There were \_\_\_\_\_\_ girls in the car.
- 17) I will call you only \_\_\_\_\_ minutes later.
- 18) The cook needs \_\_\_\_\_ more onions.
- 19) I can't speak German but I can speak \_\_\_\_\_ English.
- 20) Our teacher has got \_\_\_\_\_test CDs in his bag.
  - We write letters with ink.
  - <sup>(i)</sup> We write letters in ink.



We use "write in ink, chalk, etc."

#### B- Find the mistakes in the following sentences and rewrite them as in the example.

Example: My son has got a little friends. My son has got *a few* friends.

- 1) My students have got a little English books with them.
- 2) There is a few snow on Kaçkar Mountain this year.
- 3) This is a small town. There are only a little shops.

4) We have got a little chairs in our room.

5) There is a few chocolate on the cake.

6) I can solve a little problems in one minute.

#### FEW / LITTLE

#### Few means nearly "no".

Examples: There were few costumers in the supermarket. We have few coloured pens. When I was in hospital, few people visited me.

#### Little means nearly "no" or "nothing".

Examples: There is little water in the bottle. They have little butter in the fridge. I had little money after the fun-fair.

#### C- Complete the following sentences using "few/ a few/ little/ a little".

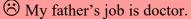
1) There was \_\_\_\_\_\_ coke in the bottle. It wasn't enough for us.

2) Carol answered \_\_\_\_\_\_ letters yesterday.

3) Students can't practice their English, because they have \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity.

4) We couldn't finish the work, because there were \_\_\_\_\_\_ workers.

- 5) I can't buy this shirt. I need \_\_\_\_\_ more money.
- 6) John has \_\_\_\_\_ mails in his mailbox.



<sup>©</sup> My father's a doctor.

We don't use "job", when we tell the professions.

### **IMPERATIVES**

We use imperatives				
-	varning or a request. We don't ha	ave subject in		
imperatives.				
Examples:				
Open the door	Close the windows	Sit down.		
B- We use "don't" in front of the verb to make the imperative negative.				
Examples:				
Don't open the door	Don't close the window	Don't sit down		

# C- We can use "please" to make the imperative more polite. "Please" can be used at the beginning or at the end. It can be used with affirmative and negative imperatives.

Examples:

*Please*, open the door Don't close the window, *please*.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences as in example above.

- run in the corridor.
   talk to your friends.
   listen to your teacher carefully.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ eat or drink something.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ take notes carefully.

#### **B-** Match the following sentences.

- a) I'm very hungry.
- b) I've got an exam tomorrow.
- c) It's very cold here.
- d) I've got a headache.
- e) It's raining heavily.
- f) There isn't any bread at home.
- g) My father has got a toothache.
- h) The road is icy.
- i) The coke is very cold.
- j) The bank is still wet.

1) Don't go out.

6) \_\_\_\_\_

7) \_\_\_\_\_ 8) \_\_\_\_\_

- 2) Take an aspirin.
- 3) Eat something.
- 4) Buy some from the supermarket.
- 5) Take him to the dentist.
- 6) Drive carefully
- 7) Don't sit down.
- 8) Study your lesson.
- 9) Put on a jumper.
- 10) Don't drink.

 $a.\dots \quad b.\dots \quad c.\dots \quad d.\dots \quad e.\dots \quad f.\dots \quad g.\dots \quad h.\dots \quad i.\dots \quad j.\dots$ 

🙁 Remind your father the shopping list in the morning.

<sup>(C)</sup> Remind your father of the shopping list in the morning.



After "remind" we always use "of".

be polite with the people.

keep your desk tidy.

bite your nails.

10) \_\_\_\_\_ visit older people in Bayrams.

9) \_\_\_\_\_ be rude to your friends.

## THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE OF VERB TO BE

#### **Affirmative**

I was You were He was She was It was We were They were

#### Negative

I was not / wasn't You were not / weren't He was not / wasn't She was not / wasn't It was not / wasn't We were not / weren't They were not / weren't Question Was I? Were you? Was he? Was she? Was it? Were we? Were they?

Example: I am 36 years now. I *was* 35 last year. They are at home now. They *were* in Istanbul in the morning. Kate and Jim *were* at the cinema last night.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Make sentences using the past form of "to be".

1) The students / at school / yesterday / ? /
2) It / rainy / at the weekend / ? /
3) Your friend / ill / on / Monday /
4) She / at the disco / on Sunday night /
5) You and your wife / at the cafe / at 6:00 /
6) She / at home / in the afternoon /
7) They / late / for school / yesterday /
8) You / in Ankara / last year /
9) The shop / open / at the weekend /
10) Ago / angry / very / two hours / he /
11) busy / ten / ago / the lines / minutes
12) Liverpool / last / champion / year / the / in / league / Premier / the

O My car's colour is white.

<sup>(C)</sup> My car's white.



We don't use "colour" when we tell the colour of something.

#### B- Complete the sentences with "was /wasn't", "were / weren't".

- 1) There \_\_\_\_\_\_ ten students in the classroom.
- 2) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ at home at 1:00. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ out.
- 3) It \_\_\_\_\_\_ cold yesterday but it \_\_\_\_\_\_ cold at the weekend.
- 4) Tim and Jim \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the disco last night.
- 5) Where \_\_\_\_\_\_ you ten years ago?
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ your parents at the party yesterday?
- 7) My teacher \_\_\_\_\_\_ very pleased with me.
- 8) It \_\_\_\_\_\_a fantastic gig.
- 9) My dad \_\_\_\_\_\_ in Istanbul last week. He was in Yalova.
- 10) Your sister \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the bookshop in the morning.

#### C- Make questions and give answers as in the example.

	the film	hardworking?	Yes, it was.
	the book	interesting?	
	the streets	exciting?	No, it wasn't.
	the school	clean?	
Was	the hotel	cheap?	Yes, they were.
Were	the food	delicious?	
	the rooms	comfortable?	No, They weren't.
	the dress	fashionable?	
	the cars	fast?	
	the students	crowded?	
	the audience	happy	

Example: Were the cars fast?

Yes, they were.

1)	?
2)	?
3)	?
4)	?
5)	?
6)	?
7)	?
8)	?
9)	?
10)	?

O She's chatting with her friends.

<sup>(i)</sup> She's chatting to her friends.



We use "chat to someone".

 $\leq$ 

#### **D-** Answer the following questions

- 1) Where were your parents at the weekend?
- 2) Why were you late for the class?
- 3) What was the weather like yesterday?
- 4) Where were you last summer?
- 5) Who was the Prime Minister two years ago?
- 6) What was the name of your primary school teacher?
- 7) Who were you with at the party?
- 8) When was your best friend's birthday?
- 9) What colour was your teacher's shirt yesterday?
- 10) Who was the first President of the Turkish Republic?
- 11) Who was the first man on the moon?
- 12) Which team was the last champion in the Turkish League?
- 13) Why was your friend sad yesterday?
- 14) Where was your first house?

15) When was the World War I?

## E- Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then, match the questions to the answers.

a) was / with / your sister / who / at the party?
b) the meeting / at/ were / teachers / how many / there?
c) last night / you / at / home / were / alone?
d) open / was / supermarket / the / on Sunday?
e) were / much / tickets / the / how / Bodrum / to?

No, it was closed.
 eighty-three.
 10 NTL
 No, I was out.
 with aunt Clara.

a.... b.... c.... d.... e....

 $\mathfrak{S}$  They filled the tank of oil.

 $\bigcirc$  They filled the tank with oil.



We use "fill with water, juice, gas, etc.".





## THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE

#### Affirmative \_\_\_\_\_

I played You played He played She played It played We played They played

#### <u>Negative</u>

I did not play You did not play He did not play She did not play It did not play We did not play They did not play (\* did not = didn't) Question

Did I play? Did you play? Did he play? Did she play? Did it play? Did we play? Did they play?

#### We use The Simple Past Tense for

#### A) A completed action in the past at a definite time.

Example: I *started* school in 1983

#### B) A past action when we ask or give time.

Example: *When did* you finish your homework? *When did* she go there?

#### C) Past Habits.

Example: I *always played* football when I was young. They *always went* to school on foot.

#### SPELLING

1) We add **-ied** to the verb ending in **"y"** following a consonant and drop **"y"**.

Examples: study – stud*ied* 

cry- cried

2) We double the consonant with the verbs of one syllable with one vowel and ends in a single consonant.

Examples: stop – stop*ped* 

stop – stop*ped* travel - travel*led* 

3) We use past form of irregular verbs in positive sentences.

Examples: go – went

buy – bought

come - came

 $\textcircled{\circle}$  Two people dead in the accident.

<sup>(ii)</sup> Two people died in the accident.



"Dead" is an adjective, but "die" is a verb.

#### TIME EXPRESSIONS

last	week	ten days		in	1976	on	Sunday
	month	five years			summer	at	ten o'clock
	year	two weeks	ago		June		after
	summer	two hours			the morning		before
	January	a month			the afternoon	at	the weekend
	Sunday				the evening		
	semester						

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences in The Simple Past Tense.

- 1) The student \_\_\_\_\_\_ (take) an exam yesterday.
- 2) My family \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to Istanbul in 1971.
- 3) They \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- 4) Mr. Çakmak \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new car last week.
- 5) The workers \_\_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the work at 6 o'clock.
- 6) The little girl \_\_\_\_\_ (cry) all night because she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a headache.
- 7) She \_\_\_\_\_\_ (not forget) to buy present for her friend's birthday.
- 8) It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (be) sunny yesterday. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (not rain).
- 9) After school, the students \_\_\_\_\_\_ (not play) basketball in the hall.
- 10) Ayşegül \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) late and she \_\_\_\_\_ (not catch) the bus.
- 11) The bus \_\_\_\_\_ (not stop) at the bus stop in the morning.
- 12) After the earthquake, they \_\_\_\_\_ (rent) a house in the village.
- 13) \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football after lunch?
- 14) \_\_\_\_\_ your friend \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at a hotel in Adana?

#### **B-** Rewrite the following sentences in The Simple Past Tense.

- 1) My son goes to the cinema every weekend. (last weekend)
- 2) It rains in Rize everyday. (yesterday)

3) They go to their hometown every summer. (last summer)

- The match started ten minutes before.
- The match started ten minutes ago.



We use "ago" when we talk about past events in relation to the present.

- 4) Mehmet has a shower every evening. (yesterday evening)
- 5) Some birds fly to the south every winter. (last winter)
- 6) The football matches start at 7:00 pm. (on Sunday)
- 7) I brush my teeth every morning. (this morning)
- 8) They clean their garden every spring. (last spring)
- 9) My father listens to the news on the radio every hour. (at 10:00 am.)
- 10) I love playing football (when I was a child)

#### C- Complete the following sentences using the verbs in The Simple Past Tense.

- 1) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ to work by car yesterday. (go)
- 2) The girls \_\_\_\_\_\_ with their friends at the weekend. (meet)
- 3) My mother \_\_\_\_\_\_ when she was 57 years old (die).
- 4) We \_\_\_\_\_\_ a nice time at the party last night. (have)
- 5) I \_\_\_\_\_ late this morning and I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus. (get up / miss)
- 6) Ayşe \_\_\_\_\_ very hard and \_\_\_\_\_ the exam. (study / pass)
- 7) Sarah \_\_\_\_\_\_ her homework early and \_\_\_\_\_ to music. (finish /listen)
- 8) Yasin \_\_\_\_\_\_ to a new job last month. (start)
- 9) The film \_\_\_\_\_\_ at 10:00 and it \_\_\_\_\_\_ at 12:00. (start / finish)
- 10) Yasemin \_\_\_\_\_\_ a new pair of jeans yesterday. (buy)

#### D- Ask questions and give short answers as in the examples.

	Bülent	Aslı
clean the car	$\checkmark$	Х
finish his/her homework	✓	Х
tidy his/her room	✓	$\checkmark$
help his/her father	Х	$\checkmark$
play tennis	Х	Х
watch TV	✓	$\checkmark$
listen to music	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

In the end, they finished the examination.

In the end means, "finally" or "last".



Example:

Did Bülent clean the car? Did Aslı clean the car? Yes, he did No, she didn't

Choose the best alternative and answer the question	15.
Did you buy a cassette or a CD?	I bought a CD
Did you come to school by bus or on foot?	
Did your friend watch TV or listen to music last night?	
Did you father come home early or late?	
Did your friend buy a book or a magazine? Did you finish your homework before or after dinner?	
Die you missi your nome work before of after uniter.	
Ask question for the underlined words as in the exa	mple.
Example:	-
They arrived home at ten o'clock yesterday	
a- Who arrived home late yesterday?	
b- What time did they arrive home yesterday?	
c- When did they arrive home?	
She was late for school this morning, because she miss	ed the bus.
I started <u>teaching English in 1987</u> .	
I watched <u>a good programme about animals</u> on TV.	
i wateried <u>a good programme about ammais</u> on 1 v.	
The director went to Yalova for a conference.	

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  She suggested to meet at the cafe.

 $\bigcirc$  She suggested meeting at the cafe.

We use "suggest doing something".

5) <u>A lot of people went to Italy for the match.</u>
a b
6) <u>The reporter bought a new camera</u> from Japan. a b
7) She bought <u>the expensive camera</u> . a-
8) <u>My</u> daughter learned <u>a little English when she was four</u> . a b
<ul><li>c</li></ul>
a b c d
10) I <u>bought my new car</u> <u>two years ago</u> . a
b
b c

#### **G-** Answer the following questions.

1) When did you start this school?

2) Where did your friend go for summer holiday?

3) Why did your father come home late?

4) How long did you study yesterday?

5) How often did your mother go to the cinema when she was young?

O The patients thanked to the doctors and nurses.

 $\bigcirc$  The patients thanked the doctors and nurses.

We use "thank someone".

7) What time did you go to bed last night?

8) How much money did you spend at the weekend?

9) Where did you go on a holiday last summer?

10) Why did your father go to the bank last week?

#### H- Complete the following dialogue.

Murat: Hello, Ahmet	?
Ahmet: I was in Istanbul.	
Murat:	?
Ahmet: I visited my grandparents.	
Murat:	?
Ahmet: We went there at 8 in the morning.	
Murat:	?
Ahmet: No, we didn't. We went by car.	
Murat:	?
Ahmet: We stayed there for 6 hours.	
Murat:	?
Abmet: We came back about 5 pm	

Ahmet: We came back about 5 pm.

#### I- Complete the passage with the best word or phrase from the list below.

(1)month, I went to A	ntalya for two days. I went (2)	my friends.
We went there by bus. We (3)	_ a taxi from the bus station to (4)_	hotel in
Konyaaltı. The weather was very (5)	so we walked a lot.	
On the first (6), we	went sightseeing. We (7)	the historical
places in the city centre. The next day, we	e went to the Düden and Kurşunlu v	waterfalls.
On the first evening we had (8)	in a restaurant. On the	e second evening,
went to (9) a show in Side. It	was fantastic!	

1.	a. next	b. following	c. last	d. that
2.	a. to	b. with	c. for	d. on
3.	a. had	b. cleaned	c. bought	d. took
4.	a. our	b. their	c. her	d. your
5.	a. foggy	b. nice	c. awful	d. stormy
6.	a. month	b. minute	c. hour	d. day
7.	a. visited	b. met	c. spent	d. tidied
8.	a. breakfast	b. meal	c. dinner	d. lunch
9.	a. play	b. see	c. listen	d. do

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  Some students are not good in chemistry.

③ Some students are not good at chemistry.

We use "good at science, football, speaking, etc.".

## **CLAUSES OF RESULT**

#### as a result / consequently / therefore / so... (that) / such ... (that) / as a consequence

#### We use result clauses to combine sentences and to express the result of something.

Examples: All the snakes were killed. Mice invaded city. All the snakes were killed *as a result* mice invaded city.

I think therefore I am.

It was very cold. Not many people went to the match. It was very cold yesterday. *Consequently*, not many people went to the match.

The teacher's voice was low. I couldn't hear her. The teacher's voice was *so* low *that* I couldn't hear her.

It was a delicious meal. Everybody thanked to the cook. It was *such* a delicious meal *that* that everybody thanked the cook.

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Rewrite the following sentences with a suitable clause of result.

1) They got up very early. They finished the work early.

- 2) The man spent much money on holiday. He can't buy the tickets.
- 3) There were some very angry people in front of the disco. The police couldn't relax them.
- 4) He studied very hard. He answered all the questions correctly.
- 5) She was a very beautiful girl. Many people offered her to marry.
- 6) The company was very pleased with him. They rewarded him at the end.
- 7) I was very tired. I went to bed very early.
  - O Some students are weak at chemistry.

Some students are weak in chemistry.



We use "weak in grammar, tennis, science, etc.".

## **BE GOING TO FUTURE**

#### **Affirmative**

I am going to run fast You are going to run fast He is going to run fast She is going to run fast It is going to run fast We are going to run fast They are going to run fast

#### Negative \_\_\_\_\_

I am not going to run fast You aren't going to run fast He isn't going to run fast She isn't going to run fast It isn't going to run fast We aren't going to run fast They aren't going to run fast

#### Question

Am I going to run fast? Are you going to run fast? Is he going to run fast? Is she going to run fast? Is it going to run fast? Are we going to run fast? Are they going to run fast?

We use Be Going To

#### **A)** To express the subject's intention or plan to do an action in future. Examples:

I am *going to* give an examination tomorrow. They *are going to* leave at 4:30. My friend won the lottery. He says he *is going to* buy a new house.

#### B) To predict the future, using information we have now.

Examples: I've drunk too much. I'm *going to* have a sore throat. Look at the black clouds. It's *going to* rain. It's 8:00! You are *going to* miss the bus.

#### C) To talk about a fact in the future.

Examples: My son is *going to* be three next month. The school is *going to* finish on 14 June. I'm *going to* celebrate my 40<sup>th</sup> birthday next week.

#### TIME EXPRESSIONS

next	Sunday	two days	later	soon	tomorrow
	week	three weeks			
	month	two months			
	year	three years			
	Spring	an hour			
	Christmas	ten minutes			
	weekend				

O I am not interested with football.

☺ I am not interested in football.



We use "interested in music, sport, cinema, etc.".

#### **EXERCISES**

A- Complete the following sentences in "be going to future" using the verbs in the brackets.

1) We	(watch) a film on TV tonight.
2) They	(build) a new sports centre in the town.
3) My son	(not take) an examination tomorrow.
4) The sky is blue. It	(not rain) today.
5) Banu	(attend) fifth grade next year.
6) We	_ (invite) our friends to dinner tomorrow.
7) You	(speak) English at the end of this year.
8) Mr. Karagöz	(leave) for Bayburt next month.
9) The students	(have) an exam tomorrow.
10) My cousin	(join) the army two months later.

#### B- This is Kim and Jill's weekend plan. Complete the sentences as in the example.

	Kim	Jill	You
Listen to music	✓	✓	
Visit her grandparents	✓	✓	
Help mother	✓	X	
Watch TV	X	✓	
Paint the room	X	$\checkmark$	
Do homework	✓	✓	
Have a party	✓	X	
Have a picnic	X	X	

Example:

Kim is *going to* listen to music, visit her grandparents, help her mother, do her homework and have a party but she isn't *going to* watch TV, paint her room or have a picnic at the weekend.

1) Jill \_\_\_\_\_

2) I \_\_\_\_\_

### O The students are leaving to school trip.

 $\bigcirc$  The students are leaving for school trip.

-%-

We use "leave for places, cinema, match, etc.".

#### C- Complete the sentences in "be going to future" using the verbs in the box.

attend X 2 visit	stay take	get married have	study spend	watch
1) My son is ill. He			in bed all day	
2) Some students		a sum	nmer school in Muğla.	
3) Sibel			law at university.	
4) I'm sure. They _			soon.	
5) We		Fenerbah	çe match this evening.	
6) The principal		a semina	r in Erdek next week.	
7) My friend is ill.	I		him in the hospital.	
8) Millions of stude	ents	the uni	versity exam in June.	
9) The new couple		their honeym	oon in a luxury hotel.	
10) They			_ a baby next month.	
<ol> <li>Your hands are of</li> <li>You are very human</li> </ol>	lirty. What are y	you going to do? you going to do?		
<ul><li>2) You are very hundled</li><li>3) Your father is very</li></ul>	lirty. What are y ngry. What are y ery tired. What is	you going to do? you going to do? s he going to do?	re you going to buy?	
<ol> <li>Your hands are of</li> <li>You are very hunded</li> <li>Your father is very</li> <li>Your friend inviti</li> </ol>	lirty. What are y ngry. What are y ery tired. What is ted you to her bi	you going to do? you going to do? s he going to do? arthday party. What a	re you going to buy? ng to take with them?	
<ol> <li>Your hands are of</li> <li>You are very hunded</li> <li>Your father is very hunded</li> <li>Your father is very hunded</li> <li>Your friend invition</li> <li>Your parents are set of the s</li></ol>	dirty. What are y ngry. What are y ery tired. What is ted you to her bi going on holida	you going to do? you going to do? s he going to do? arthday party. What a	ng to take with them?	,
<ol> <li>Your hands are of</li> <li>You are very hunded</li> <li>Your father is very hunded</li> <li>Your father is very hunded</li> <li>Your friend invition</li> <li>Your parents are set of the s</li></ol>	dirty. What are y ngry. What are y ery tired. What is ted you to her bi going on holida ams next week.	You going to do? You going to do? Is he going to do? In the going to do? In the going to do? In the going to do? What are the going the	ng to take with them?	,
<ol> <li>Your hands are of</li> <li>You are very hunds</li> <li>Your father is very</li> <li>Your friend invition</li> <li>Your parents are</li> <li>You have two experiments</li> <li>You have two experiments</li> </ol>	dirty. What are y ngry. What are y ery tired. What is ted you to her bi going on holida ams next week. ing to do when y	You going to do? You going to do? Is he going to do? In the going to do? In the going to do? In the going to do? What are the going the	ng to take with them?	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
<ol> <li>Your hands are of</li> <li>You are very hunds</li> <li>Your father is very</li> <li>Your friend invition</li> <li>Your parents are</li> <li>You have two experiments</li> <li>You have two experiments</li> </ol>	dirty. What are y ngry. What are y ery tired. What is ted you to her bi going on holida cams next week. ing to do when y	You going to do? You going to do? The going the go	ng to take with them?	,

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  My niece is married with a policeman.

 $\bigcirc$  My niece is married to a policeman.



We use "married to a doctor, a handsome boy, a rich man, etc.".

### E- Ask questions for the underlined words.

1) Catherine is going to buy a new camera next week.	
a- Who	?
b- What	
c- When	?
2) <u>They</u> are going to <u>spend their holiday</u> in <u>Marmaris</u> .	
a- Who	?
b- What	?
c- Where	?
3) <u>My</u> father is going to help <u>me</u> with <u>my homework</u> .	
a- Whose	?
b- Who	?
c- What	?
4) The President is going to stay in the USA for a week.	
a- Who	2
b- Where	
c- How long	?
5) <u>They</u> are going to spend <u>a lot of</u> money for <u>the decoration of their new house</u> .	
a- Who	2
b- How much	
c- What	
F- Complete the following questions using be going to future.	

1) Sally: what / David/ do?	?
Terry: Paint the living room walls.	
Sally: what colour / he / paint them?	?
Terry: Purple	
2) Seda : what / Kemal / do / after university?	?
Ceyda : First, he is going to finish the military service.	
Seda : how long / he / be away?	?
Ceyda : About twelve months.	

O Alpay plays in the school team.

 $\bigcirc$  Alpay plays for the school team.



We use "play for a team".

## **MAY / MIGHT**

#### We use "may" and "might" to talk about possible events in future.

Examples:

It may rain tomorrow.

I haven't decided yet. I may go to Bodrum.

#### We can use "may" and "might" in negative forms.

Examples: I may *not come* to the cinema with you. We may go shopping. They *might not* come to your wedding ceremony. Their son is ill.

#### It's generally no problem whether you use "may" or "might".

Example: We can say "They may help you" or "They might help you".

#### If the event is not real, we use "might".

Examples: If I were there, I *might* solve the problem. If she came earlier, she *might* help us.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences with "may" or "might".

1) What are you wearing for the party?\_\_\_\_\_\_ black suit.

2) Be careful. The road is icy. \_\_\_\_\_\_ fall down.

3) They went to the party. I didn't know. I \_\_\_\_\_ go.

4) Don't let the children come into the room. They \_\_\_\_\_ tear books.

5) The minister \_\_\_\_\_\_ come to our city next week.

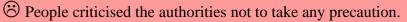
#### B- Answer the following questions with "may".

1) Where are you going this weekend?

#### 2) When are you going on holiday?

3) What are your parents doing tomorrow?

4) Who will teach you English next year?



<sup>(c)</sup> People criticised the authorities for not taking any precaution.



We use "criticised someone for doing / not doing something".

## MANY / MUCH / HOW MANY / HOW MUCH

"Much" is used with uncountable nouns.		
It is used in questions and negatives. Much refers to quantity.		
Example:		
I haven't got much time.	Have you got <i>much</i> time?	
"Many" is used before plural co	untable nouns.	

It is used in questions and negatives. Many refers to number. Example:

There aren't *many* shops in my town. Are there *many* shops in your town?

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences using "many", "much".

1) We are foreigners. We don't have \_\_\_\_\_\_ friends here.

- 2) My father doesn't carry \_\_\_\_\_ money in his pocket.
- 3) Have you got \_\_\_\_\_\_ homework to do?
- 4) Are there \_\_\_\_\_ people at the birthday party?
- 5) Did you read \_\_\_\_\_ English books?
- 6) There isn't \_\_\_\_\_bread left.
- 7) Has your father got \_\_\_\_\_\_ time to clean his car?
- 8) There are \_\_\_\_\_\_ fast food shops on Çark Street.
- 9) There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ rain in our town this year.
- 10) Are there \_\_\_\_\_\_ trees in your garden?

#### How much is used with uncountable nouns to ask the quantity.

Example: How much money do you need? How much sugar do you add this cake? How much time do you need to cook the dinner?

#### How many is used with countable nouns to ask the number.

Example: How many brothers have you got? How many people work in this factory? How many e-mails do you receive a week?

O Some animals are in danger to extinction.

③ Some animals are in danger of extinction.

We use "in danger of".

#### B- Complete the following questions using "how many" or "how much".

1)	_ teachers are there in your school?
2)	money does your father earn?
3)	tea do you drink a day?
4)	books did you read last year?
5)	time do you need?
6)	letters are there in Grammarline?
7)	lines are there in a page?
8)	time do you need for that?
9)	water does a person need a day?

#### **C-Answer the following questions.**

1) How many cities are there in Turkey?

2) How many new words do you learn a week?

3) How many brothers and sisters have you got?

4) How many people are there in your house?

5) How much money do you spend a day?

#### D- Match the following questions and answers.

- a) How many students are there in your class?b) How many children have they got?c) How many days are there in a week?
- d) How many months are there in a year?
- e) How many minutes are there in an hour?
- f) How much milk is there in the jug?
- g) How much tea does your father drink?
- h) How much cheese is there in the fridge?
- i) How many plates are there on the table?
- j) How much fruit juice is there in the bottle?

- 1) There are 7 days in a week.
- 2) They have got three children
- 3) There is some milk in the jug.
- 4) He drinks ten cups of tea a day.
- 5) There are 60 minutes in an hour.
- 6) There isn't much cheese in the fridge.
- 7) There are four plates on the table.
- 8) There are twelve months in a year.
- 9) There is a lot of fruit juice in the bottle.
- 10) There are 30 students in our class.

 $a.... \ b.... \ c.... \ d.... \ e.... \ f.... \ g.... \ h.... \ i.... \ j....$ 

 $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  The woman gave all the details of the driver.

The woman gave all the detail of the driver.



"Detail" is an uncountable noun.

## **OBJECT PRONOUNS**

#### **Subject Pronouns**

#### **Object Pronouns**

•		•	
Ι	I help the secretary	The secretary helps me	me
You	You help the secretary	The secretary helps you	you
He	He helps the secretary	The secretary helps <u>him</u>	him
She	She helps the secretary	The secretary helps <u>her</u>	her
It	It helps the secretary	The secretary helps <u>it</u>	it
You	You help the secretary	The secretary helps you	you
We	We help the secretary	The secretary helps <u>us</u>	us
They	They help the secretary	The secretary helps them	them

Examples: The music is too loud. Turn *it* down. I am very busy. Can you help *me* please? Banu doesn't watch science-fiction films.

Ayşe is very ill. Take *her* to the hospital. I never go to disco. I don't like *it*. She doesn't like *them*.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Rewrite the following sentences using subject and object pronouns.

1) <u>Gül</u> is going to the cinema tomorrow. I'm meeting <u>Gül</u> in front of the cinema.

2) <u>Mr. Dede</u> is carrying a heavy bag. Let's help <u>Mr. Dede</u>.

3) The students study their lessons everyday after school.

4) Mr. Karagöz always asks the students difficult questions.

5) <u>The windows</u> are very dirty and <u>the students</u> are cleaning <u>the windows</u>.

#### **B-** Chose the correct word as in the example.

- 1) They are cleaning *them / they*. The carpets are dirty.
- 2) I am mending *it / its*. The radio is broken.
- 3) We love our parents and they love we / us.
- 4) Can you help *I* / *me* please?
- 5) They are not coming to party. Don't wait for *them / they*.
- 6) I am very thirsty. Please bring I/me a glass of water.
- 7) The dog is in the garden. Take *it / its* into the kennel.
- 8) My friend is ill. I am visiting *she / her* tomorrow.
- 9) Your shoes are very dirty. Please, clean they / them.
- 10) Can you give me / I your pencil?

#### O She described the driver with detail.

<sup>(C)</sup> She described the driver in detail.

We always use "describe something in detail".

## GERUND

#### Gerund means adding -ing to the verbs.

We use gerund

#### A) As a noun and subject of the sentence.

Examples: *Learning* English is very enjoyable. *Running* keeps people fit.

#### **B) In short prohibitions.**

Examples: No *parking* No *smoking* 

No swimming.

#### C) After "go" when it refers to activities.

Examples:

My son goes *fishing* at the weekends. We go *camping* in the highlands in summer.

#### D) When there is an immediate preposition after the verb.

Examples: Semih Sayginer is good at *playing* billiards.

The man was accused of *killing* his friend.

I'm interested in *collecting* old coins.

#### E) After the verbs "love", "like", "hate", "prefer", "enjoy", "dislike".

Examples: I *prefer* drinking tea to drinking coke. The students *hate* taking examinations. The little boy *likes* drinking milk and eating sweets.

#### F- After certain verbs.

The most important ones;

avoid – consider – delay – deny – escape – excuse – imagine – finish – forgive involve – keep– mind – miss – postpone – prevent –remember –resist– risk – stopsuggest – understand

Examples:

They *finished painting* the walls of the garden.

When the teacher came in, the students *stopped talking*.

I can't stand listening to loud music.

Yesterday, the students remembered bringing their books.

O I am tired to write examples.

③ I am tired of writing examples.



We use "tired of" doing something.

#### A- Complete the following sentences in gerund.

1) My son complains about	(have) a lot of work.
2) I like (play) football but I do	n't like (play) badminton.
3) In our school, teachers usually	(finish / give) lesson at 4: 30.
4) Cem	(not like/read) science-fiction books
but he (like) adventure stories.	
5) My wife (	(can not stand / watch) old Turkish films.
6) The teacher	(keep / teach) after the bell rang.
7)(smoke) is bad for everybod	ly but (run) is healthy.
8) In April	(walk) in the rain is very romantic.
9) My friend (learn)	(play) computer games.
10) My father stopped	(work) ten years ago.
11) Turkish Airlines stopped	(fly) to Urfa last week.
12) My friend doesn't like (work)	indoors but he likes (work) outdoors.
13) I enjoy (drive) on sunny day	s but I hate (drive) on rainy days.
14) The young people go	(dance) at the weekends.
15) The mayor isn't interested in	(build) a new park.

#### B- Write sentences about Kate and then write about yourself.

Go to party	Read book	Go to bed early	Do homework
$\checkmark$			
	$\checkmark$		
			$\checkmark$
		$\checkmark$	
	Go to party ✓	Go to party     Read book       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓	Go to party     Read book     Go to bed early       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓       ✓     ✓

Kate loves going to parties.		Ι
Kate	·	Ι
Kate	·	Ι
Kate	·	Ι

$\frown$						
	T 1'1	dancing	· · · 1		•	
$\sim$		dancing	with	non	muerc	
	IIIKU	uanting	VV I UII	DOD	music.	

 $\bigcirc$  I like dancing to pop music. We always use "dance to" a music.

#### C- Answer the following questions and give true answers.

- 1) Do you like staying with your grandparents?
- 2) Which are you good at? Playing football or playing basketball?
- 3) Do you always remember switching off the lights when you leave the room?
- 4) Does your father park his car when he sees "no parking" sign?
- 5) Which one is easier? Climbing mountains or going trekking?
- 6) Do you like going to bed early and getting up early?
- 7) When does your mother go shopping?
- 8) Do you sometimes go dancing with your friends?
- 9) Are your schoolmates interested in playing computer games?
- 10) Where do you like going on holidays with your friends?

#### D- Complete the following sentences with a gerund using the words given in the box.

	go take play x 2 travel x 2 to	each tell dance work
--	--------------------------------	----------------------

- 1) Young people enjoy \_\_\_\_\_\_ to pop music.
- 2) The players had to stop \_\_\_\_\_\_ when it rained heavily.
- 3) He loves \_\_\_\_\_\_ to parties with his friends.
- 4) I remembered \_\_\_\_\_ my umbrella before I left the house.
- 5) Mrs. Demir prefers \_\_\_\_\_ by car to by taxi.
- 6) My grandmother liked \_\_\_\_\_\_ stories in the winter evenings.
- 7) I started \_\_\_\_\_\_ English when I was 25.
- 8) My brother usually finishes \_\_\_\_\_\_ at 7:00 pm.
- 9) Ömer is very good at \_\_\_\_\_\_ computer games.
- 10) My wife dreams of \_\_\_\_\_\_ round Turkey.

O I am looking forward to go on holiday.

<sup>(C)</sup> I am looking forward to going on holiday.



We use gerund after "look forward to".

## **INFINITIVES**

We use infinitives with to.

#### A) To express purpose.

Examples: I *went to* the post office to post letters. They bought a new car *to go* on holiday.

#### **B)** After certain verbs.

want - decide - agree - try - promise - offer - hope - plan - forget - arrange - remember - start - learn - ask - continue - afford - apply - choose - help - manage - prepare - refuse

# C) After certain verbs which take an object and infinitive with to; "advise, allow, forbid invite, order, remind, teach, tell, warn".

Examples: I *advised* him *to* watch that film. My students *reminded* me *to* give them worksheets. The authorities *warned* people not *to* go out.

#### D) After the adjectives such as; "sorry, glad, happy, nice, ashamed, afraid".

Examples:

It is *nice to* be important but it is more important to be nice. They are *afraid to* walk on the road next to the cemetery. I am *glad to* be an English teacher.

#### E) After preferences like; "I would like, would love, would prefer".

They *would like* to spend their summer holiday at the sea-side . I *would prefer* to watch the match on TV.

#### F) With question words.

Examples: I don't know *what to* do. She doesn't know *where to* go.

We use infinitives without to.

#### A) With "had better" and "would rather".

Examples: We *had better* move another house. You *had better* telephone your parents.

#### B) With "let" and "make".

Examples: Their mother *lets* the children listen to music. They *make* the children study their lessons.

#### O I went to the market for buying some food.

I went to the market to buy some food.



After "went", we always use infinitive.

#### C) With models.

Examples: We *can* use computer. You *must* finish the letters.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Combine the following sentences using to infinitive.

1) I went to the market. I wanted to buy some cheese.

2) The director planned a meeting. He wanted to introduce the new vice-director.

3) The people went to forest. They wanted to have a picnic.

4) The children stayed in because they wanted to finish their homework.

5) Some people go to England every year. They want to learn English.

6) My father went to the garden early. He wanted to pick up some flowers.

7) A group of students went to disco. They wanted to dance until midnight.

8) I learned how to use a computer. I wanted to get a better job.

9) We came back. We forgot to lock the front door.

10) David telephoned his father. He reminded him to buy some chocolate.

#### B- Complete the following sentences using the "gerund" or the "infinitives".

1)	is harmful fo	r your health.(smoke).
2) My son likes	(stay up) late and	(get up) late.
3) Most people moved to Istanbu	ıl	(find) a job.
4) Are you really interested in		(play) bağlama.
5) Everybody must		(obey) the traffic rules.
6) We went to the cinema		(watch) the film "Ali".
7) My wife reminded me	(buy) so	me fruit and vegetables.
8) Our neighbours are planning		(sell) their house.
9) My friend gave up	(\$1	noke) three months ago.
10) When I go on holiday I prefe	er	(stay) at the hotel.

O They were discussing about the pollution on TV.

O They were discussing the pollution on TV.



We don't use prepositions when we discuss something.

#### **C-** Combine the following sentences.

- a) They went to a restaurant.
  b) Jane goes to university
  c) We always get up early.
  d) We listen to the news everyday.
  e) We have a dog in the garden.
  f) She went to Los Angeles.
  g) The students have to work hard.
  1) to study medicine.
  2) to remind him the appointment.
  3) to learn what's happening in the country.
  4) to visit her parents.
  5) to be successful.
  6) to have dinner.
  7) to protect the house from the thieves.
- h) They moved to another city.
- i) Mrs. Yaz went to a course.
- j) I phoned my friend

- 8) to learn how to use the internet.
- 9) to find a better job.
- 10) to catch the bus.

# **D-** Complete the following sentences using gerund or infinite and the words from the box

					invite study		know park.	
1) When did your friend decide an English course?								
2) They like to Sezen Aksu and							Kadir İnanır.	
3) How	v do you ex	xpect your s	tudents			the answer o	f that question?	
4)	4) fast on this narrow road is very dangerous. You may accident.							
5) My friends me with them at the weekend.								
6) We chose this school English.								
7) Are	7) Are you fond of to pop music?							
8) You	ı can' t par	k here. Can'	t you see	the no			sign?	
9) Sibe	el is	to u	niversity				engineering.	
10)			tl	he Mount	Ararat is ver	y difficult an	d dangerous.	
<ul> <li>The novel was so excited that I finished it in one night.</li> <li>The novel was so exciting that I finished it in one night.</li> <li>We use "exciting" for things.</li> </ul>								



## THE PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (IN / ON / AT)

at

the taxi / a photograph in the room / the sky the car / the middle the shop / newspaper Sakarya Turkey the city centre the garden the north of Turkey bed hospital the book the word the street the prison

his desk the door the bus stop the traffic lights the top the bottom the end home work school university college my house the concert the party a match

the wall on the door the ceiling the shelf the plate the floor the tree the envelope the horse the bicycle motorbike a bus train a plain a ship on the ground on the first floor

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences using "in", "on", or "at".

- 1) Jane's father is a doctor. He works \_\_\_\_\_\_ a hospital.
- 2) There is a beautiful house \_\_\_\_\_\_ the garden.
- 3) My father isn't home. He's \_\_\_\_\_ work.
- 4) George is studying physics \_\_\_\_\_\_ university.
- 5) My office is \_\_\_\_\_ the second floor \_\_\_\_\_ school.
- 6) Her father is \_\_\_\_\_\_ the way to Istanbul.
- 7) I'll meet them \_\_\_\_\_\_ the station tomorrow.
- 8) Janet is giving a party \_\_\_\_\_ her house next Sunday.
- 9) They met me \_\_\_\_\_ the airport \_\_\_\_\_ Istanbul.
- 10) How many passengers are there \_\_\_\_\_ this bus?
- 11) I read the article \_\_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper.
- 12) Have you got a mirror \_\_\_\_\_ your bag?

The other man entered the conversation.

- The other man entered into the conversation.
- -<del>%</del>\*

We use "enter into" / a discussion / conversation etc.

- 13) A lot of people are waiting \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop.
- 14) There are a lot of pictures \_\_\_\_\_ the walls of the classroom.
- 15) Who is the girl \_\_\_\_\_ the horse?
- 16) Look at that cat \_\_\_\_\_\_the tree.
- 17) Nurhan works \_\_\_\_\_\_ a bank \_\_\_\_\_\_ Çerkezköy.
- 18) There is a shipwreck \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bottom of the sea.
- 19) Bayburt is \_\_\_\_\_ the north east of Turkey.
- 20) There is a nice cafe \_\_\_\_\_\_ the end of this street.
- 21) There are a lot of books \_\_\_\_\_ Özlem's desk.
- 22) Hüseyin is ill. He is \_\_\_\_\_ bed now.
- 23) Yesterday we were \_\_\_\_\_\_ a football match.
- 24) Write your address \_\_\_\_\_ the bottom of the page.

#### B- Answer the following questions as in the example.

Example: Where are your books? They are in my bag.

- 1) Where are the children playing football?
- 2) Where do you wait for a bus?
- 3) Where do people dance?
- 4) Where's your teacher's bag?
- 5) Where is the teachers' room in your school?
- 6) Where do you write your name on an envelope?
- 7) Where are the children swimming?
- 8) Where does your father work?
- 9) Where is Samsun?

10) Where do you sleep?

- O The students entered into the classroom.
- The students entered the classroom.

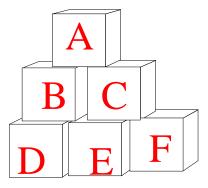


We don't use prepositions when we enter somewhere.





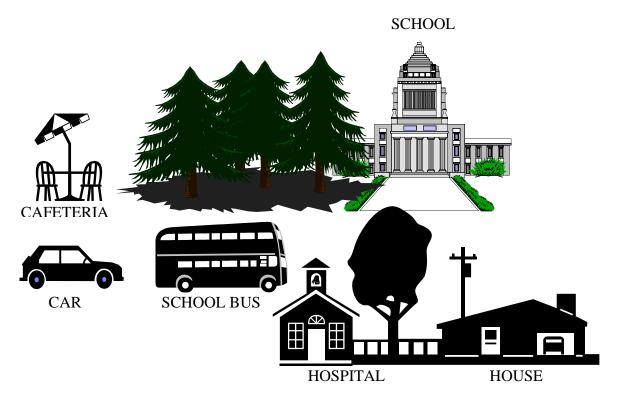
## **PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (UNDER / BEHIND / NEXT TO)**



Box B is next to box C. Box E is between box D and box F. Box B is under box A. Box A is on box C.



The driver is in his pickup. His belongings are on the body.



The school is opposite the house. The cafeteria is near the school. The hospital is next to the house. The school bus is on the road. The pine trees are between the school and the cafeteria There is a big tree in the garden of the house. The car is behind the school bus. The chairs are under the parasol in the cafeteria.

#### O Their home is in the middle of the city.

 $\bigcirc$  Their home is in the centre of the city.



We use "centre" when we want to talk about a certain point.



## **CLAUSES OF PURPOSE**

in order to / to / so that / so as to / in order that / in case / in case of

## We use purpose clauses to combine the sentences and to express the purpose of something.

Examples: I am going to market *to* buy some cake. She cleaned the office *so that* the director can come there. My father bought a car *in order to* go on a holiday.

#### We use "in order not to" or "so as not to" in negative sentences.

Examples: I set the alarm clock in order not to be late. I set the alarm clock so as not to be late.

Take some food with you *in case* you get hungry. Dial 112 *in case of* emergency.

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Rewrite the following sentences with clauses of purpose.

1) I bought an extra loaf of bread. It may not be enough. (in case)

- 2) They booked the seats. They won't wait in a queue. (so that)
- 3) The boy went to the bookshop. He wanted to buy a book. (to)

4) Take a spare tire. The tire may explode. (in case)

5) I searched the internet. I wanted to get some information about my subject. (in order to)

6) They didn't visit the man at the hospital. They didn't want to disturb him. (so as not to)

7) Please, press this button. If there is an emergency situation (in case of).

8) The government invited the IMF authorities. They want to sign a new standby. (in order to)

9) The watchman left the room. He wanted to check the garden. (to)

🔅 I was so exciting that I couldn't answer the question.

U was so excited that I couldn't answer the question.



We use "excited" for people.

### **FUTURE WILL**

<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>	Question	<u>Short Form</u>
I will take.	I will not / won't take.	Will I take?	I'll
You will take.	You will not / won't take.	Will you take?	You'll
He will take.	He will not / won't take.	Will he take?	He'll
She will take.	She will not / won't take.	Will she take?	She'll
It will take	It will not / won't take.	Will it take?	It'll
We will take.	We will not / won't take.	Will we take?	We'll
They will take.	They will not / won't take.	Will they take?	They'll

We use Future Will

 A) To express an intention and immediate decision at the moment of speaking. Examples: Someone is knocking on the door. *I will* open it.

All right, *I'll* come with you. Hold on, please. I will call him immediately.

# B) For predictions about the future. We usually use "I think", "believe" and "expect" before it.

Examples: I think *they will* come to the party. I believe *my friends will* help me with my project. I expect, the inflation will be fewer than 10 % at the end of this year.

#### C- With the sentences related to promises, warnings, hopes and requests.

Examples: I hope, *they will* come early. My father promises, *he will* visit us soon. The municipality warns that there will be shortage of water tomorrow.

#### TIME EXPRESSIONS

next	Sunday	two days	later	soon	tomorrow
	week	three weeks			
	month	two months			
	year	three years			
	spring	an hour			
	Christmas	ten minutes			
	weekend				

O I will speak the students about the lessons.

O I will speak to the students about the lessons.

It means; "I will speak nobody else".

#### A- Complete the following sentences with the verbs in the box in Simple Future Tense.

walk	ask	have	be	catch	make	open	come	go	eat
1) Please, be quick! We late for school.								chool.	
<ul> <li>2) I don't know the way to the post office. I the way.</li> </ul>									
						spa			
						sp			
								uie oui	5 <sup>1415.</sup>
B- What	will the l	ife be li	ke in	the futur	e?				
Most peop	ple $\rightarrow$	use e	electri	c cars		Housewiv	$es \rightarrow$	go sł	opping
Students	$\rightarrow$	go to	o scho	ol		Some anir	nals $\rightarrow$	disap	opear
Some peo	ple $\rightarrow$		in spa			People			in offices
	$\rightarrow$		-	f water		Buses			out drivers
111010	$\rightarrow$			n forests		Robots			e housework
Scientists	$\rightarrow$	find	a cure	of cancer	r	People	$\rightarrow$	eat fi	ruits
Football	$\rightarrow$	be p	opular	•		People	$\rightarrow$	eat v	egetables

THEFE		chough full forests	Robots	,	do the house work
Scientists	$\rightarrow$	find a cure of cancer	People	$\rightarrow$	eat fruits
Football	$\rightarrow$	be popular	People	$\rightarrow$	eat vegetables
We	$\rightarrow$	live skyscrapers	There	$\rightarrow$	poor people
People	$\rightarrow$	use money	Everybody	$\rightarrow$	use computer
Students	$\rightarrow$	use books	People	$\rightarrow$	use mobile phone

#### Now write some more predictions about the life in future as in the example.

Example:

I believe, *people will* use electric cars in the future.

1) I think,

2) I don't believe,

3) I am afraid, \_\_\_\_\_

O The post office is far from our house.

 $\bigcirc$  The post office is a long way from our house.



We use "a long way" in affirmative sentences.



\_\_\_\_\_

- 4) I am not sure, \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) I suppose, \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) I doubt, \_\_\_\_

#### **C- Answer the following questions.**

- 1) Where will you be this time next month?
- 2) Which team will be the champion this year?
- 3) Who will get the highest mark in English?
- 4) Do you believe that everybody will have computers in ten years?
- 5) What will you do before you take the exam?
- 6) When you have enough money, what will you buy?

#### **D-** Complete the sentences. Use will or won't and a verb from the box.

#### win see

- Canan : I'm going to the big football match tonight. My team, Fenerbahçe, is playing.
- Cenk : Do you think they \_\_\_\_\_?
- Canan : Of course. They're the best!
- Bora : You look sad. What's the matter?
- Berk : My girlfriend is on her way to Germany. She's going to live there, so I probably\_\_\_\_\_\_ her again.
- Bora : Why not? You can go there for a holiday.

#### E- Complete these predictions with verbs from the box in the future simple.

fall be disappear snow get increase be

- 1) Temperature \_\_\_\_\_ by a few degrees.
- 2) Tomorrow, it \_\_\_\_\_\_ all day.
- 3) Next winter, there \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of snow.
- 4) The world population \_\_\_\_\_\_and there \_\_\_\_\_\_enough food or water for everyone.
- 5) Cities by the sea \_\_\_\_\_\_ when the level of the sea rises.
- 6) The weather \_\_\_\_\_\_better tomorrow.

 $\textcircled{\circle}$  The post office isn't a long way from our house.

<sup>(ii)</sup> The post office isn't far from our house.

We use "far from" in negative sentences.



## **BE GOING TO OR WILL**

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Choose the best alternative

- 1) Look out. You are going to / will crash the window.
- 2) I am not sure. I will / am going to phone her at the weekend.
- 3) My wife bought two tickets. We will / are going to watch the film.
- 4) The clouds are very dark. It is going to / will rain.
- 5) They are going to / will play the match at Şükrü Saraçoğlu Stadium.
- 6) When they visit him, he *is going to / will* give them some chocolate.
- 7) I hope, my friends are going to / will help me.
- 8) We have decided to repaint our house. What colour are you going to / will paint it?
- 9) Why are you going out? I am going to / will buy bread.
- 10) I am sure you will / are going to pass your final exam.
- 11) I think Sarah will / is going to get a new job.
- 12) Do you think Carol is going to / will phone you this evening?
- 13) Don't worry about the money. I'm sure they will / are going to lend you some.
- 14) Why are you cleaning the car? I am going to / will take the children to the zoo.
- 15) What would you like to drink? I will / am going to have a cup of tea, please.

#### B- Rewrite the following sentences in "be going to" future or "will".

- 1) My father has an appointment at the doctor's.
- 2) We plan to move to our new house next year.
- 3) I am likely to finish the book at the end of this month.
- 4) They arranged a meeting about unemployment for the weekend.
- 5) Tom bought two tickets for the concert on Sunday.
- 6) I am afraid I have a lot of work at the time of the match.
- 7) They didn't decide where to go. Antalya or Muğla.
- 8) The children are making a lot of noise. The baby is sleeping.
- 9) Mr. Aydın is planning to take the students to the Black Sea Region.
  - $\textcircled{\time{O}}$  The company gave an advertisement about the new product.
  - <sup>(i)</sup> The company gave an advertisement for the new product.



We use "give advertisement for something".

### THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

#### Affirmative

I was sleeping. You were sleeping. He was sleeping. She was sleeping. It was sleeping We were sleeping. They were sleeping.

#### Negative

I was not sleeping. You were not sleeping. He was not sleeping. She was not sleeping. It was not sleeping. We were not sleeping. They were not sleeping.

#### Question

Was I sleeping? Were you sleeping? Was he sleeping? Was it sleeping? Were we sleeping? Were they sleeping?

#### We use The Past Continuous Tense

A) To talk about an action which was in progress at a particular point of past time. We don't use this tense to say that the action was complete but we use it to show that the action was processing.

Examples:

I *was working* in Amasya seven years ago. They *were having* breakfast at eight o'clock. She *was making* cake for the birthday party. At this time last week, we *were driving* to Ankara

# B) We use "when", "while", "as" and "just as" to join the sentences. We usually use "while", "as", and "just as" before the past continuous tense and we use "when" before the simple past tense.

Examples:

I was going home. I met one of my old friends. When I met one of my old friends, I was going home While I was going home, I met one of my old friends.

or

As I was going home, I met one of my old friends.

## C) We can also use past continuous tense to describe two continuing actions happening at the same time.

Examples: I *was preparing* an exam. My children *were watching* TV.

While I was preparing exam, my children were watching TV.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

1) I was walking to school when I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the accident.

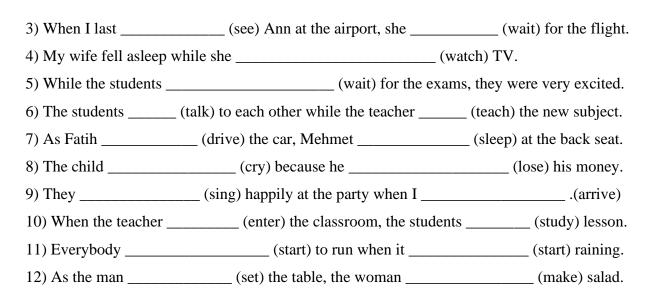
2) While their mothers \_\_\_\_\_ (talk), the children were playing ball.

#### $\textcircled{\times}$ The teacher gave the students an advice on studying lesson.

<sup>(C)</sup> The teacher gave the students some advice on studying lesson.

-<u>?</u>?-

"Advice" is an uncountable noun.



#### **B-** Choose the correct word and underline it.

1) While I was having / had a bath, the electricity went off / was going off.

2) While they *had / were having breakfast*, their friends *were calling / called* them.

3) When Mr. Kara arrived / was arriving at his office, his secretary was typing / typed letters.

4) The car broke down / was breaking down while we were going / went to Trabzon.

5) When Ünal arrived / was arriving home, Hacer was playing / played with Emir.

6) As I went / was going home, I found / was finding an old coin.

7) Jack's wife *found / was finding* the pictures while she was cleaning / cleaned the house.

8) While the parents were talking / talked, the children were playing / played with toys.

9) When they arrived / were arriving at the airport, the guide was waiting / waited for them.

10) While I listened / was listening to the song, I remembered / was remembering my mother.

#### **C- Answer the following questions.**

1) What was your mother doing when you arrived home?

2) Where was your father going when you saw him in the street?

3) Why was your friend crying when you entered the classroom?

4) Who helped your mother while she was cooking?

5) What did you buy when you last went shopping?

6) What was your friend doing while you were studying?

7) What did your father do when he saw your report?

 $\textcircled{\circle}$  After two hours, we are playing tennis.

☺ In two hours, we are playing tennis.



We use "in" if it means at the end of a period.

#### **D-** Ask questions for underlined words.

1) I was buying the tickets, when the train moved
1) <u>I</u> was buying the tickets when the train moved.
a? b?
c?
·
2) They were swimming in the pool at this time yesterday.
a?
b?
c?
3) <u>I went jogging every day</u> last summer.
a?
b?
c?
d?
4- The Governor was giving a briefing to the minister in the conference hall yesterday.
a?
b?
c?
d?
e?
5- The journalists were trying to get news about the train crash.
a?
b?
c?

#### E- The inspector is questioning some people about the bank robbery. Write his questions in past continuous tense or in the Past Simple Tense.

1) What / you / do / at 11:30 a.m. yesterday?	??
2) Where / be / the guard?	?
3) What / Mr Gül / do?	?
4) How many robbers / go / into the bank?	?
5) The robbers / carry / guns?	?
6) Where / their van / wait?	?
7) Driver / a man or a woman?	?
8) You / see / anybody else outside the bank	??
9) Some men / repair / the alarm system?	?
10) Anyone / wait / at the bus stop?	?

71

 $\ensuremath{\textcircled{\ensuremath{\Theta}}}$  I am agree with you.

③ I agree with you.



"Agree" is a verb, not an adjective.

## **ADJECTIVES**

#### We use adjectives:

#### a) Before nouns.

brown eyes, beautiful girl, round table, Turkish boy.

### b) After some verbs like: be, smell, feel, become, get, seem, look etc. You look *sorry*. Have you got a problem? The food smells *delicious*. Who cooked it? I am *very happy* today. Because it's my birthday. Yesterday the weather was *cold* and *snowy*.

#### KINDS OF ADJECTIVES

1) Possessive Adjectives: my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their.
This is my new car. Did you like it?
<i>Their</i> house is next to the post office.
2) Interrogative Adjectives: which, whose, what.
Which book did you like most?
<i>Whose</i> father works in that company?
What colour would you like?
3) Quantitative Adjectives: some/any/no/few/much/many/a lot of/one, ten.
My friend has got <i>a lot of</i> books in his library.
The little child has no friends.
Do you need <i>much</i> money to build your house?
4) Demonstrative Adjectives: this, that, these / those.
I bought <i>these</i> books yesterday.
Have you ever been to <i>that</i> restaurant?
This book belongs to my friend.
5) Distributive Adjectives: either, neither, every, each.
<i>Each</i> student has got a dictionary.
I have seen <i>neither</i> of the children.
6) Adjectives of Quality: bad, thin, fat, dirty, clean, clever.

He bought a *gold* watch for his wife's birthday. There are a lot of *clean* restaurants in the town.

#### The Order of Adjectives.

Size	Åge	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Noun
A small A big	New Old	Round Round	Blue Brown	Turkish	Plastic Leather	Ball Armchair
A big	Ulu	Koulia	DIOWII		Leather	Afficiali

O The footballers were very nervous with the referee.

 $\bigcirc$  The footballers were very angry with the referee.



We use "angry" to show a temporary state.



#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Put the words in the right order.

1) bought/I/new/a/bag/leather.
2) They/wonderful/had /a/night/at the disco
3) She/buy/wants/a/jacket/new/black/to/.
4) My/friend/old/has/some/got/old/picture/lovely/frames.
5) They/to/buy/want/wooden/a/old/small/table.

#### B- Complete the sentences with the correct adjective from the box.

late X 2 thirsty good careful tired expensive hot crowded rainy difficult easy well sorry rich heavy foreign scientific

1) Can you open the window, please? It's very \_\_\_\_\_ here.

2) She can't finish the work today. She feels very \_\_\_\_\_

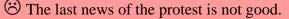
3) I am very \_\_\_\_\_. Could you please give me a glass of water?

4) George gets up \_\_\_\_\_\_ so he is always \_\_\_\_\_\_ for school.

- 5) My wife is a \_\_\_\_\_ cook. She cooks \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Mr. Pektaş is a very \_\_\_\_\_ driver. He never drives fast.
- 7) The little boy was very \_\_\_\_\_\_ because he lost his toy.
- 8) Mr. Koç can buy a Ferrari because he is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) The bags are too \_\_\_\_\_\_. You can't carry them.
- 10) A lot of people in Turkey can speak \_\_\_\_\_ languages.

11) It is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to live in Istanbul because it is very \_\_\_\_\_\_.

- 12) The train station was very \_\_\_\_\_\_ so I couldn't find my boyfriend.
- 13) The TUBITAK supports \_\_\_\_\_\_ works.
- 14) The weather was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ so the children stayed indoors.
- 15) I answered all the questions. They were very \_\_\_\_\_\_.



The latest news of the protest is not good.

"Latest" means up to now.

#### Adjectives "-ed" or "-ing"

#### We use adjectives which end with -ed to express people's feeling.

Examples: I was very *surprised* by the accident news. The students were *confused* with the exam results.

## We use adjectives which end with "-ing" to talk about a person or a thing gives us that feeling.

Examples: The accident news was very surprising. The exam results were very confusing for the students.

#### Some adjectives ending with "-ed" or "-ing".

bored – boring	excited – exciting
interested – interesting	disappointed – disappointing
amused – amusing	satisfied – satisfying
tired – tiring	depressed – depressing
frightened – frightening	exhausted – exhausting
surprised – surprising	disgusted – disgusting
relaxed – relaxing	annoyed – annoying
astonished – astonishing	shocked – shocking

#### C- Complete the following sentences with suitable adjectives.

1) I am not interested in politics. Because it is not	(interesting/interested)		
2) My son is very (excited/exciting) because	he is going to take an exam tomorrow.		
3) Mr. Durmaz worked very hard today. He feels very	(tired/tiring)		
4) The story was very long and very	(bored/boring).		
5) The fun-fair was very	(amused/amusing). We had great fun.		
6) After the earthquake, the life in the Marmara Region was very			
(depressed/depressing)			
7) The match was very	_ (excited/exciting) and we were very		
(confused/confusing).			
8) The questions were very	(confused/confusing).		
9) The result was very	(astonished/astonishing).		
10) After the bath, the children were all	(relaxed/relaxing).		

O She is a well student.

 $\odot$  She is a good student.

 $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$ 

"Good" is an adjective.

## **ADVERBS**

- Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs. Children can learn English through games *easily*.
- Adverbs usually go after verbs. The man was driving *carefully*.
- Adverbs usually go before adjectives and other adverbs. The examination was *extremely* difficult. The students studied *incredibly* hard for the exam

#### **KINDS OF ADVERBS**

**1) Adverbs of frequency:** always, usually, ever, never, often, frequently, twice, once, etc. They go before the main verb, and after the verb to be.

I am *always* tired after school. They *always* go shopping *once* a week.

2) Adverbs of manner: quickly, slowly, politely, easily, etc... They go before the main verb, after the verb auxiliary or at the end.

He politely refused to go there.

The teacher was *patiently* answering the students' questions.

At the concert, the dancers danced *beautifully*.

**3**) Adverbs of time: soon, now, last month, then, next week, recently, today, tomorrow, afterwards, eventually, etc. They usually go at the end of the sentences.

We will finish the school *next month*. Tom graduated from the university *last year*.

4) Adverbs of place: here, there, outside, etc.

The police arrived *here* in ten minutes after I telephoned them.

**5) Adverbs of degree:** completely, certainly, undoubtly, very, quite, rather, extremely, etc. They usually go before the adjectives and verbs.

The weather was *quite* cold yesterday.

This book is *completely* different from the others.

The guests quite liked the party.

## If we want to emphasise the adverbs, we can use them at the very beginning of the sentences.

*Last month*, Turkey sent some troops to Afghanistan. *Quietly*, they left the conference. *At the hospital*, they were smoking.

⊖ I can't speak English very good.

☺ I can't speak English very well.



"Well" is an adverb and it modifies the verb.



Adjective + ly Careful-carefully Quick-quickly Soft-softly Bad-badly

Adjective + ily heavy-heavily easy-easily angry-angrily happy-happily

Adjective + bly comfortable-comfortably probable-probably

#### **Irregular Adjectives**

good-well hard-hard fast-fast late-late early-early

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the sentences using a suitable adverb from the box.

	quietly badly loudly clearly carefully hard slowly well immediately easily		
1) Please speak I can't hear you.			
2) Enter the room The baby is sleeping.			
	3) I asked my brother to drive because the roads were icy.		
	4) Please write your homework I can't read it.		
5) This is the last form. Please fill it in			
6) They lived in England for a year. They can speak English			
7) The workers had a lot of work so they worked very			
8) I know around Istanbul. I can find the address			
9) Our team lost the match. They played			
10) I have no time. I want to finish the work			

#### **B-** Rewrite the sentences using an adverb as in the example.

- 1) Teoman is a good singer. He sings well. 2) Emre is a very good footballer. 3) Yılmaz Erdoğan is a good actor.
- 4) İsmail is a good teacher.
- 5) Carl Lewis was a fast runner.

- 6) Schumacher is a fast driver
- 7) My friend is a patient teacher.
- 8) Mirsat is an angry basketball player.
- 9) I gave them polite answers.
- 10) They have a happy life.

O Firstly, the car was OK., but it broke down yesterday.

③ At first, the car was OK., but it broke down yesterday.

"At first" is a time adverb.

#### C- Choose the correct word: Adjective or adverb.

- 1) He went to bed *late / lately* and got up *late / lately*
- 2) My pen-friend answered my letter *quick / quickly*. He is a *good / well* friend.
- 3) The questions were very *easily / easy*. The students answered them *easily / easy*.
- 4) Their director is a *polite / politely* person. He always speaks *polite / politely*.
- 5) Ebru Gündeş is a good/well singer. She sings good/well.
- 6) Their house is very *comfortable / comfortably*. They live there *comfortable / comfortably*.
- 7) He is riding his bike *dangerous / dangerously*.
- 8) The spectators were very *patiently / patient*. They waited *patiently / patient*.
- 9) They are a very *happy / happily* family. They live *happy / happily*.
- 10) The pupils are very *intelligent / intelligently*. They ask questions *intelligent / intelligently*.

#### **D-** Ask questions for underlined words.

1) The children were playing in the garden happily.

a)	·
b)	
,	
2) In my father's time, teacher	s behaved the students well, too.
a)	
3) I am sure, our children will	live in the world peacefully.
b)	
<b>E.</b> Complete these sentences	with an adjective or an adverb.
1) Tim's a very	golf player. He always loses.
2) Daisy works too	
3) Don't speak so	
4) Selim is	at languages, so he is going to be an interpreter.
5) He speaks very	

- 7) Mert usually gets to school \_\_\_\_\_\_but this morning he was \_

 $\textcircled{\begin{tince} \hline \end{tine}}$  I apologized the people in the party for living so early.

③ I apologized to the people in the party for living so early.



We use "apologize to people".

## AS - AS

#### We use "as-as" to show that the two things are the same.

Examples: Today is *as* cold *as* it was yesterday. Cem Yılmaz is *as* talented *as* Yılmaz Erdoğan. I am *as* hungry *as* a wolf.

#### We also use "as-as" in questions.

Examples: Have you bought *as* much fruit *as* you want? Are you *as* old *as* your friend?

#### We use "as-as" with some expressions.

Examples: You can wait here *as* long *as* you want. Please, come back *as* soon *as* possible.

#### We also use "as-as" in negative sentences.

Examples: I can't use computer *as* well *as* Ömer Faruk can. They don't clean their house *as* often *as* you do.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Make sentences in "as-as" using the names and adjective in brackets.

1) (Carol / Jane / tall)	
2) (Moscow / Washington / not modern)	
3) (Feyza 22 / Banu 22 / old)	
4) (Kenan 1.78 / Kübra 1.70 / short)	
5) (Nescafe / Turkish coffee / delicious)	

#### We can use the expression "the same \_\_\_\_\_\_ as".

Examples: I bought a red t-shirt. My friend bought a red t-shirt. I bought *the same* colour t-shirt *as* my friend.

#### B- Make sentences using "the same \_\_\_\_\_ as".

1) I am 37. My friend is 37.

- 2) Burcu has blue eyes. Ebru has blue eyes.
- 3) I like diet coke. My sister likes diet coke.
- 4) I got up at 7.30. My son got up at 7.30.

### ⊖ I apologize you all the mistakes I did.

<sup>(C)</sup> I apologize you for all the mistakes I did.



We use "apologize for something".

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## **COMPARATIVE / SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES**

#### We add "-er" to one-syllable adjectives to make them comparative.

#### We add "ier" to two-syllable adjectives ending in "y".

Examples:	
pretty – prettier	dirty – dirtier
heavy – heavier	lucky – luckier
early – earlier	easy-easier

#### We add "more" to the other two-syllable and more syllable adjectives. Examples:

Careful – more careful	beautiful – more beautiful
polite – more polite	crowded – more crowded
expensive – more expensive	interesting – more interesting
exciting – more exciting	comfortable – more comfortable

#### Some adjectives are irregular.

Examples: good – better bad – worse far – further little – less

Examples:

This cafe is too *noisy*. Let's go somewhere quieter. The hotel was *more expensive* than I expected. Istanbul is *more crowded* than Ankara. Germany is *further* than Greece. Her English is *better* than her Turkish The girl is *more beautiful* than some actresses. English is *easier* than most of the languages. Today, the weather is *worse* than yesterday. I have *less* money than my friend. Trains are *safer* than buses. The Black Sea region is *greener* than the Marmara region.

<sup>(C)</sup> There are less parks in Ankara than in Istanbul.

<sup>(ii)</sup> There are fewer parks in Ankara than in Istanbul.



"Few" is used for countable nouns.

#### **EXERCISES**

A- Complete the following sentences using the adjectives in brackets as in the example. Example:

Our house is *older than* my friend's house.

- 1) Erzurum is \_\_\_\_\_ (cold) than Ağrı.
- 2) BMW is \_\_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) than Hyundai
- 3) Is your father \_\_\_\_\_ (old) than your mother?
- 4) Is English \_\_\_\_\_\_ (difficult) than Turkish?
- 5) Today is \_\_\_\_\_ (warm) than yesterday.
- 6) France is \_\_\_\_\_\_ (big) than England.
- 7) Tarık's marks are \_\_\_\_\_ (good) than Engin's marks.
- 8) The flowers in our garden are \_\_\_\_\_ (nice) than the flowers in your garden.
- 9) Our town is \_\_\_\_\_ (cheap) than your town.

## B- Complete the following sentences using comparative forms of the adjectives in the box.

	difficult	small	cold	cheap	sharp	exciting	soft	quiet
1) The	1) The room is too hot. I like it a bit							
2) This	example is v	very simp	le. I'm s	ure you ca	n solve			ones.
3) The	hotel is very	expensiv	e. Can w	ve find a _		one	in the to	wn?
4) This	4) This shirt is too big. Have you got a one?					one?		
5) I car	5) I can't cut with this knife. Have you got a one?						one?	
6) The film was very boring. Let's watch a one.						one.		
7) This	7) This pillow is hard. I can't sleep. Have you got a one?						one?	
8) It's very noisy here. Is there a place near here?					nere?			
C- Answer the following questions.								

1) Are you taller than your best friend?

2) Who is better than you in English?

O This book is different than that book.

This book is different from that book.

**:** 

We use "something is different from another thing."

- 3) Is boxing more dangerous than karate?
- 4) Is a Boeing faster than a Concorde?
- 5) Are science-fiction films more exciting than detective stories?
- 6) Which is warmer? Antalya or Bursa?
- 7) Which is more famous? Blue Mosque or Kocatepe Mosque?
- 8) What is more boring than watching TV?
- 9) Who is taller than you in the class?
- 10) Which is higher? Atakule or Galata Tower?

#### We can use "a bit, a lot, much" before comparative adjectives to emphasize it. Examples:

It is *much* colder today than yesterday. (It was cold yesterday but today is colder) My father is *a bit* older than my uncle. I am *a lot* hungrier now.

#### SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

#### We add "-est" to one-syllable adjectives to make them superlative.

Old	– the oldest	late	– the latest
big	– the biggest	large	– the largest
slow	– the slowest	fast	– the fastest
nice	– the nicest	thin	– the thinnest
dark	– the darkest	clean	– the cleanest

#### We add "iest" two-syllable adjectives ending in "y".

Pretty – the prettiest	dirty	– the dirtiest
Heavy – the heaviest	lucky	- the luckiest
Early – the earliest	easy	– the easiest

#### We add "the most" to the other two-syllable and more syllable adjectives.

Careful	– the most careful	beautiful	- the most beautiful
Polite	– the most polite	crowded	- the most crowded
expensive	- the most expensive	interesting	- the most interesting

O The new BMW is superior than its old models.

<sup>(C)</sup> The new BMW is superior to its old models.



We use "superior to something".

#### Some adjectives are irregular.

good	– better	– the best
bad	- worse	– the worst
far	– farther / further	– the farthest / the furthest
little	- less	– the least
	Examples:	
	The mosque is the old	dest building in our town.
	NBA is the most fam	ous basketball league in the world.
	August is <i>the hottest</i> month of the year.	
	This is the nicest room	m in the hotel.
	It was the most borin	g film I've ever watched.
	Golf is the least excit	<i>ing</i> sport for me.
	I am not the most exp	perienced teacher in my school.
	Our department is the	e busiest department at school.

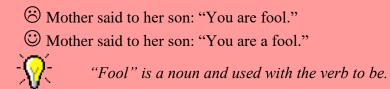
#### **D-** Look at the chart and make superlative sentences as in the example.

The River Nile Mount Ararat The Kızılırmak Konya Asia My father Antalya Cheetah Istanbul English Hüsovin	high long large old hot fast crowded popular young	city continent mountain river person hotel animal language	in the world in Turkey in our family.
Hüseyin			

Example:

Hüseyin is the youngest person in our family.

1)	 	 	
4)			
5)			
6)			
,			
			·
/	 	 	



#### E- Complete the following sentences with superlative form of the adjectives.

- 1) Muş is \_\_\_\_\_ (far) city I've ever been to.
- 2) Grammarline \_\_\_\_\_\_ (practical) book I've ever read.
- 3) Brave Heart \_\_\_\_\_ (good) film I've ever watched.
- 4) Love Story \_\_\_\_\_ (romantic) song I've ever listened.
- 5) Thanks for the dinner. This \_\_\_\_\_\_ (good) dinner I've ever had.
- 6) I didn't like the party. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (boring) party I had ever been to.
- 7) The tourists liked Antalya very much. It\_\_\_\_\_ (hot) place they had ever been to.
- 8) The footballers were very excited. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (big) stadium they had ever played.
- 9) My mother died on 1 October 1996. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (sad) day in my life.
- 10) I can't forget her. She \_\_\_\_\_\_ (beautiful) girl I've ever seen.

#### F- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Which was the happiest day of your life?
- 2) Who is the most important person in your life?
- 3) Who is the oldest person in your family?
- 4) Who is the most hardworking student in your class?
- 5) Which is the most famous building in your town?
- 6) What is the biggest mistake you've ever had?
- 7) Which is the best film you've ever watched?
- 8) Who is the most famous person you've ever met?
- 9) What is the most exciting book you've ever read?
- 10) Which is the most expensive cloth you've ever bought?
- 11) What is your biggest idea for future?
- 12) Who is the luckiest person in your family?
  - O Mother said to her son: "You are a foolish".
  - OMOTHER STATE OF CONTRACT.



"Foolish" is an adjective.



#### G- Complete the following sentences "comparative" or "superlative".

1) We gave a party at \_\_\_\_\_ (good) disco in the city.

- 2) What is \_\_\_\_\_\_ (popular) music in your town?
- 3) What is \_\_\_\_\_\_ (strong) than a horse?
- 4) The Black Sea region \_\_\_\_\_ (wet) than the Marmara region.
- 5) What is \_\_\_\_\_\_ (little) dangerous sport?
- 6) The director was \_\_\_\_\_ (early) person this morning.
- 7) I always get up \_\_\_\_\_ (late) than my wife.

8) Our room is much \_\_\_\_\_ (comfortable) than their room.

9) He was sorry yesterday but he looks \_\_\_\_\_ (happy) today.

10) \_\_\_\_\_ (happy) day of his life was his tenth birthday.

## H- Read the following comparison between Erzurum and İzmir. Fill in the gaps with one word only.

İzmir has a much (1) \_\_\_\_\_population (2) \_\_\_\_\_Erzurum and the towns in İzmir are (3) \_\_\_\_\_crowded than the ones in Erzurum. There are not (4) \_\_\_\_\_many mountains in İzmir (5) \_\_\_\_\_in Erzurum. Both cities have interesting historical places. But İzmir has many (6) \_\_\_\_\_rivers than Erzurum. All parts of Erzurum have much (7) \_\_\_\_\_ snow in winter than anywhere in İzmir. İzmir is in the Western part of Turkey and doesn't have its winter at the same time (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the cities in the Eastern part of Turkey. All the people in these cities speak the same language (9) \_\_\_\_\_ each other, Turkish, but their accents are very different.

#### I- Only one of the following comparative sentences is correct. Correct the mistakes where necessary.

1) She got up more late than she did.	
2) My stereo is moderner than hers.	
3) Tuncay is a more good footballer than me	
4) Is it more difficult as her last exam?	
5) I paid less than my cousin for the ticket	
6) My girlfriend is the same age like me.	
7) My father's earache is badder today.	
8) My parents live much more far away now	

O My daughter is a coward girl.

<sup>(C)</sup> My daughter is a coward.



"Coward" is a noun and it means: "one without courage".

## THE MORE / THE MORE

#### It is used to express that something depends on another thing.

Examples.

The earlier you get up, the healthier you feel . The more you study, the more successful you will be. The earlier we start work, the earlier we finish it. The sunnier the weather is, the happier I feel. The more you work, the more you earn.

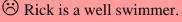
#### EXERCISE

### A- Rewrite the following sentences using "the more / the more" as in the example.

#### Example:

If a student listens to his teacher carefully, he can understand the subject better. *The more carefully* a student listens to his teacher, *the better* he can understand the subject.

- 1) If you eat less bread, you will keep fit.
- 2) If you read more, you will be more intellectual.
- 3) If you travel more, you will see more places.
- 4) If you read slowly, you will understand better.
- 5) If you smoke more, you will be unhealthier.
- 6) If you rest, you will feel relaxed.
- 7) If you eat more fruit and vegetables, you will be healthier.
- 8) If you smile, you will be happier.
- 9) If you talk politely, the people will like you.
- 10) If Turkey exports more products, she will earn more money.
- 11) When you practice more, you can solve more problems.
- 12) If you eat slowly, you can digest better.



CRICK is a good swimmer.



"Good" is an adjective and it modifies the nouns.

## SO OR SUCH

#### "So" is used before the adjectives and adverbs.

Examples: It is *so* cold today! They played *so* well!

#### "So" is used with "many" and "much".

Examples: There are *so* many students in the classroom. My son had *so* much work to do.

#### "So" is used to describe the result of an action together with "that".

Examples: It was *so* cold *that* we didn't go out. They played *so* well *that* they won the match 3-0

#### "Such" is used before an adjective and singular or plural nouns.

Examples: He was *such* a clever student. They are *such* beautiful houses.

#### "Such" is used with "a lot of" and it modifies the nouns, countable or uncountable.

Examples: They bought *such a lot of* books from the bookshop. They had *such a lot of* work to do at the weekend.

#### "Such" is used to describe the result of an action together with "that".

Example:

He was such a clever student that, he always got high marks.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences with "so" or "such".

1) It is difficult to finish the project because there is \_\_\_\_\_ much work to do.

2) Ziya drives carefully. He is \_\_\_\_\_\_ a careful driver.

3) Most of the teachers are \_\_\_\_\_\_ helpful. I love them.

- 4) I haven't visited my friend for \_\_\_\_\_\_ a long time.
- 5) They have never walked \_\_\_\_\_\_ far from the house.
- 6) He loves playing football. It's \_\_\_\_\_an exciting sport.

#### $\textcircled{\ensuremath{\overline{\odot}}}$ The meal smells deliciously.

<sup>©</sup> The meal smells delicious.

-8-

After the verbs, "look, feel, taste, smell" we use adjectives, not adverbs.



- 7) Computers are \_\_\_\_\_\_ helpful machines.
- 8) The children love their parents. They tell \_\_\_\_\_\_ nice stories.
- 9) Cenk always wears \_\_\_\_\_ pretty clothes.
- 10) I have never carried \_\_\_\_\_\_ a heavy bag before.
- 11) The old man was \_\_\_\_\_\_ tired that he went to bed early.

#### B- Make sentences from the table using "so ..... that" or "such ..... that"

- a) The music was too slow.
  b) He is a hardworking student.
  c) Ömer uses computer well.
  d) The hotel was very expensive.
  e) The weather was too foggy.
  f) It's an exciting book.
  g) It's a very long film.
  h) Canary is a beautiful island.
  i) They gave a big party.
- j) It was too hot.

We couldn't leave the hotel.
 He never gets bad marks.
 He can type 40 pages a day.
 Nobody wanted to stay there.
 The drivers couldn't drive.
 I couldn't hear it.
 They couldn't finish it.
 Everybody wants to go there.
 I can't stop reading it.
 Everybody was there.

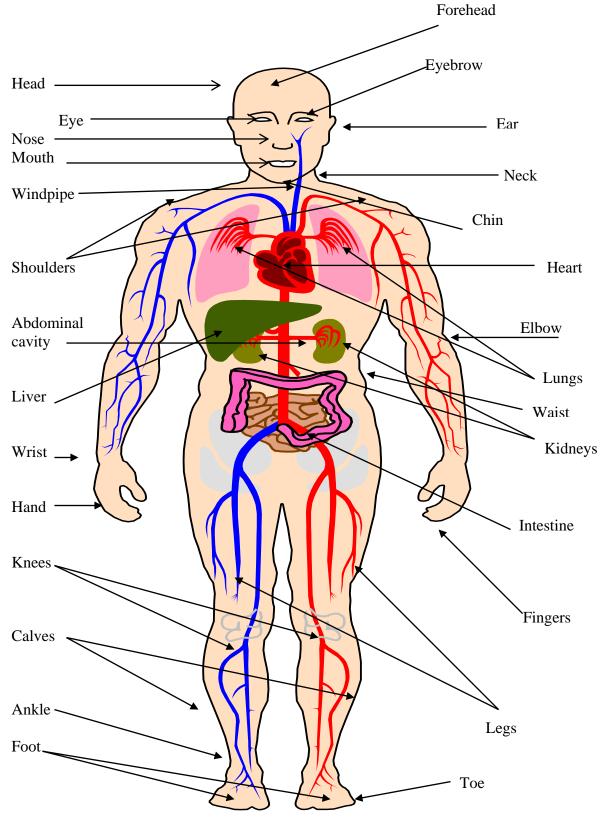
·	·
)	
)	
)	
)	
)	·
)	·
)	
0)	

#### **C-** Complete the following sentences.

All the students passed the exam. It was such \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 I missed my sister because I haven't seen her for such\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 We couldn't pay the electric bill. It was such \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 The girl was shivering. She was so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 Everyone invites her to the parties. She is such \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 My grandparents can't walk. They're so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 I can't read your handwriting. It's such \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 My friend always looses his wallet.
 My friend always loses his wallet.

"Lose" means; "not to be able to find the thing.".

### **HUMAN BODY**



## PROFESSIONS







DIRECTOR



CONDUCTOR



POLICEMAN



SECRETARY



ARTIST







NOVELIST



FISHERMAN





GARDENER



POSTMAN



FIREMAN





PHARMACIST



NURSE



HAIRDRESSER

CARPENTER





## **SPORTS**



FOOTBALL



WINDSURFING



HORSE RACING





BASKETBALL

TENNIS

KARATE



FENCING

SKATING



AEROBICS

SKIING

SCUBA DIVING

HIGH JUMPING



CYCLING











SAILING

BASEBALL





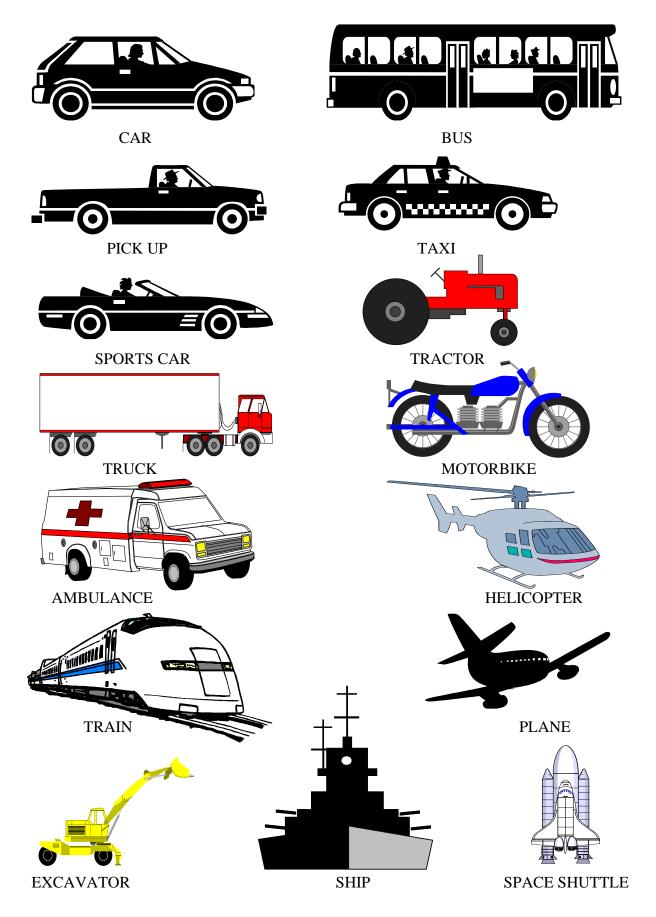


ICE-HOCKEY





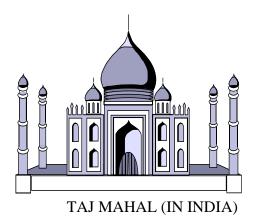
### TRANSPORTATION





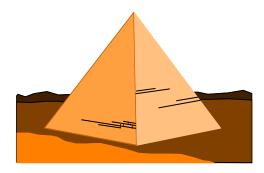


## **FAMOUS BUILDINGS**

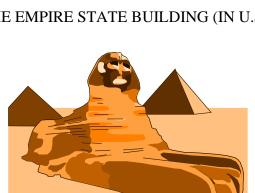




THE EMPIRE STATE BUILDING (IN U.S.A.)



PYRAMID (IN EGYPT)



THE SPHINX (IN EGYPT)



KABE (IN SAUDI ARABIA)



MAYAN TEMPLE (IN SOUTH AMERICA)

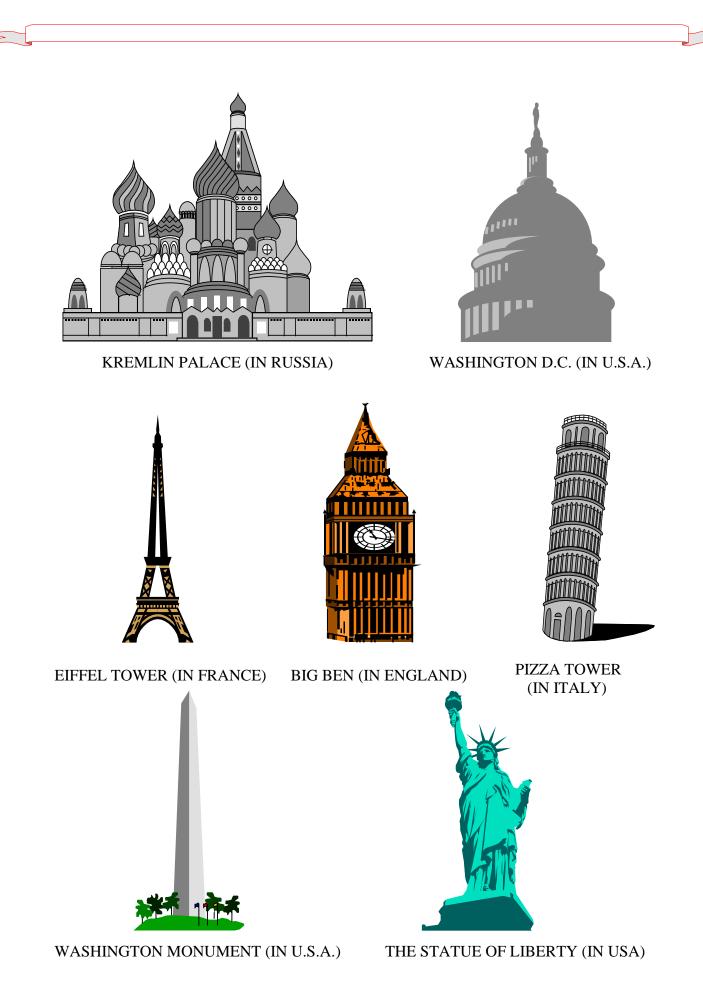


GREAT WALL (IN CHINA)



SYDNEY OPERA HOUSE (AUSTRALIA)

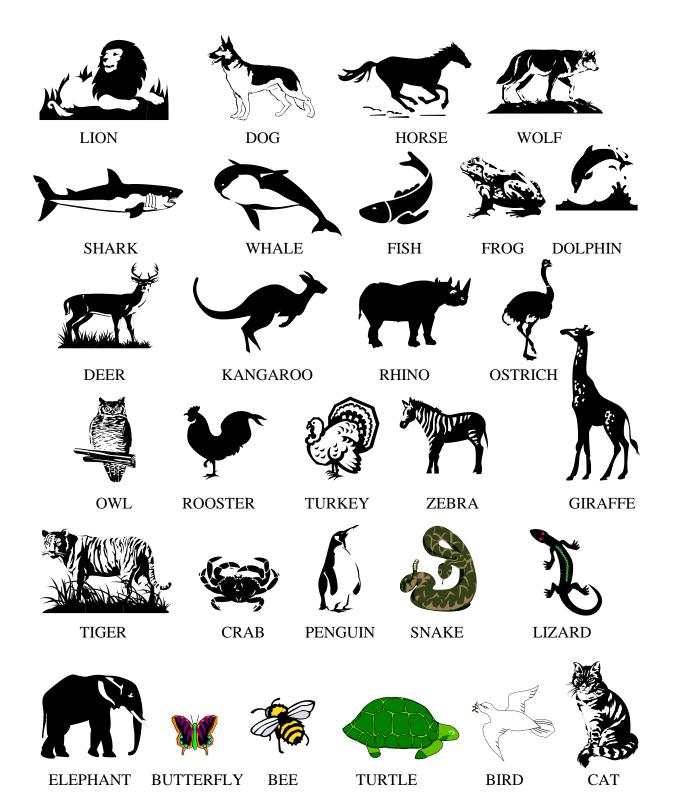








## **ANIMALS KINGDOM**



## FOOD APPLE CORN CARROT PEAR STRAWBERRY CHERRY BANANA ONION CHILLI KIWI GRAPEFRUIT TOMATO GRAPES **MUSHROOM** WATERMELON PINEAPPLE

**GREEN PEPPER** 



POTATO

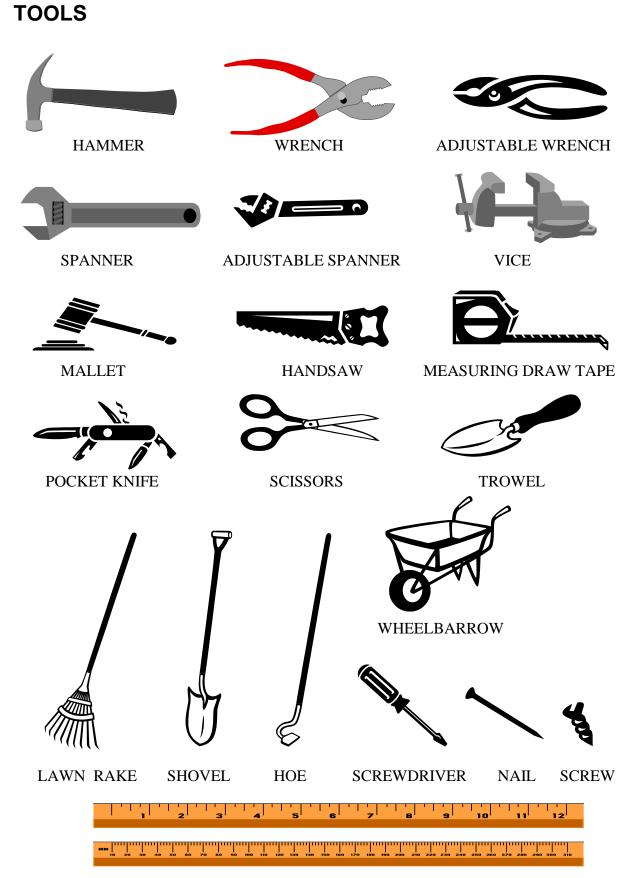




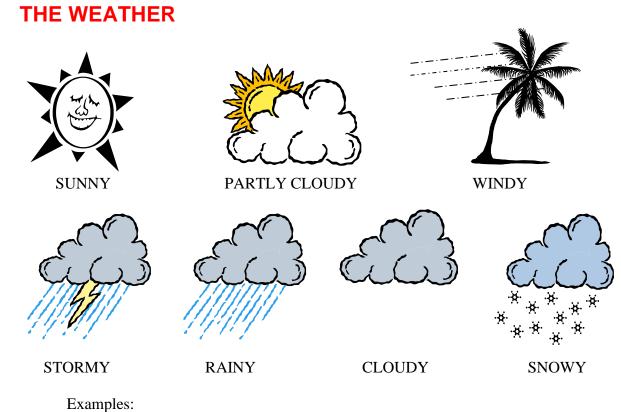


ORANGE





RULER



What is the weather like today? What was the weather like yesterday?

It is cloudy.

What will the weather be like tomorrow? I think it will be rainy. Put on your raincoat. It was snowy. We made a snowman.

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Look at the table and make sentences about the weather.

	Yesterday	Today	Tomorrow
Ankara	Cloudy	Rainy	Stormy
Erzurum	Snowy	Snowy	Windy
Izmir	Sunny	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy
Istanbul	Rainy	Rainy	Partly Cloudy

1) Ankara	yesterday.
Ankara	today.
Ankara	tomorrow
2) Erzurum	yesterday.
Erzurum	today.
Erzurum	tomorrow
3) İzmir	yesterday.
İzmir	today.
İzmir	tomorrow.
3) Istanbul	yesterday.
Istanbul	today.
Istanbul	tomorrow.

## **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS**

The possessive pronouns are: "mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs." "Its" is not generally used as a possessive pronoun.

This is *my car*. This is *mine*.

#### **EXERCISES**

A- Use possessive pronouns and rewrite sentences.

1) My car is old.

- 2) That is their house.
- 3) My mother's meals are delicious.
- 4) Ece's books are always on the table.
- 5) Şenol's table is always tidy.

## **B-** Complete the following sentences using "possessive adjectives" or "possessive pronouns".

room is tidy but \_\_\_\_\_\_ is a mess. (He / I)
 Is this book \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_? (You / I)
 That is not my umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_\_ is black. (I)

5) I love \_\_\_\_\_ car but she doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_. (I / She)

#### C- Choose the correct answer.

- 1) It is *your / yours* problem, not *my / mine*.
- 2) My sister moved to Ankara but I don't know her / hers address.
- 3) My children are going to the cinema with *theirs / their* friends.
- 4) My/mine school is in Sakarya. Where is your / yours?
- 5) Are those your / yours clothes? Please iron their / them.

We can ask questions with "whose" or "which" to find out the possessive pronoun.

#### **D-** Answer the following questions using possessive pronouns.

<ol> <li>Whose t-shirt is this?</li> <li>Whose house is the blue one?</li> <li>Which one is your football?</li> <li>Which one is their new car?</li> </ol>	(Ali Can) (Nihal) (The black one) (Sports)	
5) Whose father is a teacher?	(We)	·

 $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  The boy was afraid of his shade.

The boy was afraid of his shadow.

We use "shadow" for the shade of a person or animal.



## NEED / NEEDN'T / NEEDN'T HAVE

#### "Need" is used to talk about things which we must do.

We use infinitive with "to" after "need".

I'm ill. I *need* to go to the doctor's. She works hard. She *needs* to have a holiday.

#### We use "do" to make negative sentences, questions and short answers.

You don't *need* to bring your dictionary. Do they *need* to come to work on Sunday? Does your friend *need* to buy a new car? Yes, he does / No, he doesn't.

#### "Need" can be used for the things which we must get.

I *need* a new pair of shoes. She doesn't *need* an umbrella. Do you *need* any help with the housework?

#### "Needn't" is used to express speaker's advice or authority, and we don't need to do.

You *needn't* come to school early. You *needn't* stay here. You can stay in my house.

#### "Needn't have" is used to express that the action we did was not necessary.

We *needn't have* cleaned all the tables. (We cleaned all the tables but it wasn't necessary)

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Look at the example and make sentences using "need" or "needn't".

Tomorrow, we are going to have a picnic. I and my friend decided what to bring.

	IN		
Forks	$\checkmark$	Х	
Spoons	$\checkmark$	Х	
Glasses	X	$\checkmark$	
Plates	X	$\checkmark$	
Coke	✓	Х	
Hammock	$\checkmark$	Х	
Ball	$\checkmark$	X	

Example:

I need to bring forks but my friend doesn't need to bring forks.

The old man was resting under the shadow of the tree.

<sup>(c)</sup> The old man was resting under the shade of a tree.

We use "shade of a place" if it means protection from sun

1) _	
2)_	
3)_	
4)	
5)	
6)	

#### **B-** Answer the following questions as in the example

Example: Do you need to bring your dictionary to school everyday? No, I don't need to bring my dictionary to school everyday.

1) Where do you need to park the cars in your town?

2) What do you need to do after school?

3) Does your girlfriend need to telephone you everyday?

4) Who needs to earn money in your family?

5) When don't you need to go to school?

#### C- Rewrite the sentences as in the example.

#### Example:

I went to the cinema last week. I had seen the film before. I *needn't* have gone to the cinema.

1) They painted the house last week. They had painted it two months ago.

2) Jennifer bought two new CD's. They weren't necessary.

3) My father bought me some new ties. I have a lot of ties.

4) My wife bought some fruit. There was a lot of fruit at home.

5) Emre drove the car very fast. He wasn't in a hurry.

6) Terry got up early on Monday morning. It was his day off.

7) Mr. Crag left some tip for the waiters. The bill included the service.

 $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  We had a lot of fishes for dinner.

<sup>(C)</sup> We had a lot of fish for dinner.

"Fish" is uncountable in general.

### MUST / HAVE TO / HAS TO

#### Affirmative

I have to You have to He has to She has to It has to We have to You have to They have to

#### Negative

I don't have to You don't have to He doesn't have to She doesn't have to It doesn't have to We don't have to You don't have to They don't have to

#### Question

Do I have to? Do you have to? Does he have to? Does she have to? Does it have to? Do we have to? Do you have to? Do they have to?

#### We use "have to / has to" for the fact of rules. It is not personal.

#### Examples:

You have to stop here. The sign says "stop". The students have to wear school uniform. I have to get up at 7 o'clock. The bus leaves at 7.30. My daughter has to go to school on Saturday.

#### We use "had to" or "didn't have to" in the past.

Examples: They had to walk to school ten years ago. I had to go to hospital last week.

#### We use "must" when we give our personal feelings or ideas.

Examples: I *must* phone my friend tomorrow. It's very late. We *must* go now.

#### We use "mustn't" to express prohibition.

Example: You mustn't park here

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Complete the following sentences using "must / mustn't / have to / has to / had to / doesn't have to / don't have to".

- 1) Students wear school uniforms at the weekend.
- 2) If you want to be successful, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ study hard.
- 3) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ be late for the appointment. I promised my friend.
- 4) Tomorrow is Saturday, so we \_\_\_\_\_ get up early.
- 5) We have a lot of time. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ hurry. visit my friends.
- 6) Yesterday, my brother \_\_\_\_\_

#### O You should obey to the rules

<sup>(C)</sup> You should obey the rules

"Obey" doesn't take prepositions.





- 7) You can't turn left here. You \_\_\_\_\_turn right.
- 8) We have got a washing machine. My wife \_\_\_\_\_\_ wash the dishes by hand.
- 9) You \_\_\_\_\_\_ smoke in the hospital.
- 10) You \_\_\_\_\_ park here. It says "no parking".

#### B- Answer the following questions using "had to / didn't have to".

- 1) Why did your mother go to the post office?
- \_\_\_\_\_ post some letters. 2) Why did you go to the supermarket yesterday?
- \_\_\_\_\_\_ do some shopping.
- 3) Why did your parents go to Istanbul at the weekend?
- 4) Why didn't your friend come to school yesterday?
- \_\_\_\_\_\_ go to the doctor's.
- 5) Why didn't the man take a taxi?

\_\_\_\_\_ hurry up.

## C- Rewrite the following sentences using "must / mustn't / have to / has to / don't have to doesn't have to" as in the example.

Example:

It isn't necessary for you to wait here. You *don't have to* wait here. Smoking is forbidden in the public buildings. You *mustn't* smoke in the public buildings.

1) It is necessary to mow the grass in the garden.

You

2) We have got a lot of fruit. You needn't buy any.

3) Tomorrow there is an important meeting. Come early.

4) Feeding the animals in the zoo is forbidden.

5) It is not necessary to buy bread.

#### D- Make questions about the life at school. Use have/has to

1) wear a uniform	 ?
2) change classrooms	 ?
3) sit in the same place	 ?
4) arrive before 7:30	 ?

 $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  The students must always say the truth.

The students must always tell the truth.

We use "tell a lie", "tell the truth".

### THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

#### Affirmative

#### Negative

I haven't rested		
You haven't rested		
He hasn't rested		
She hasn't rested		
It hasn't rested		
We haven't rested		
They haven't rested		

Question

Have I rested? I've Have you rested? Has he rested? Has she rested? Has it rested? It's Have we rested? Have they rested?

#### **Short Form**

You've He's She's We've They've

We use The Present Perfect Tense.

#### A) For the events when the time is not given and not definite.

Examples:

I have visited him at the hospital. Have you seen the copy machine?

#### B) When there is a connection with now.

#### Examples:

Where is your mother? She's gone to the shop I have lost the keys of my car.

#### C) To give information or tell something happened recently.

Examples: I have seen two men coming out of your room. Ouch! I've hurt my knee.

#### TIME EXPRESSIONS

since	for	just al	ready	yet la	tely re	cently	so far
never	ever	ever since	up to	now fe	or ages	this month	
	this year	today	this evenin	g, morning	before	;	

Just: used in affirmative sentences. (it means "a short time ago")

Already: used in affirmative sentences. (it means "an action happened before expected time") Yet: used in negative and question sentences. (it means "until now")

**Since**: (From a certain time in the past)

**For**: (over a period of time)

Examples:

I've just eaten a hamburger.

Please, finish your homework. I've already finished it.

They *haven't sent* the letters *yet*.

I have been in Sapanca since 1996.

They *have played* in the garden for two hours.

Have they finished to clean the room?

<sup>(C)</sup> Have they finished cleaning the room?



We use "finish doing something".



### A- Complete the sentences with "have" or "has".

- 1) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ finished the project on electricity.
- 2) Marta and her friends \_\_\_\_\_ bought lots of things.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ your mother set the table?
- 4) The cat \_\_\_\_\_\_ climbed the tree.
- 5) Mr. Gül \_\_\_\_\_\_ completed his work.

### **B-** Change the following sentences into the Present Perfect Tense.

- 1) I didn't see my friends at school.
- 2) The footballers didn't go to match.
- 3) They don't live in an apartment flat.
- 4) The musicians practiced for two hours.
- 5) They are painting the gate of the school.

### C- Put the words into correct order and make sentences in present perfect tense.

- 1) They / a restaurant / open / Çark Street / on.
- 2) A prisoner / from / escape / prison / the.
- 3) Final exam / The students / pass / their.

### D- Complete the following sentences with "since" or "for".

- 1) I have waited for you \_\_\_\_\_\_ two hours.
- 2) They have worked in that factory \_\_\_\_\_ five weeks.
- 3) She has had her car \_\_\_\_\_ last December.
- 4) Our neighbours have been here \_\_\_\_\_ 1996.
- 5) Mr. Ak has taught in a private school \_\_\_\_\_\_ fifteen years.
  - $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  The boy is walking as his father.
  - <sup>(C)</sup> The boy is walking like his father.

*"Like" is an adjective and takes a noun after it in the object position.* 

### **EVER – NEVER**

Examples: Jack: Have you *ever* seen a famous person? Mary: Yes, I have. Jack: Who did you see? Mary: I saw Beyaz Jack: When did you see him? Mary: Last year, at a concert

Have you ever been to Muş?No, never.Have you ever climbed a mountain?Yes, many times.Have your parents ever been to abroad?No, they have never been to abroad.

### EXERCISES

### A- Give true answers to the questions.

1) I	Have	you eve	er been	to a	fashion	show?
------	------	---------	---------	------	---------	-------

- 2) Has your friend ever given you a present?
- 3) Have you ever found a wallet in the street?
- 4) Have you ever travelled by plane?
- 5) Have you ever ridden a horse?

### B- Complete the following sentences using "just", "already" or "yet".

1) I have visited my father but I haven't visited my uncle \_\_\_\_\_.

2) Have they eaten their meal \_\_\_\_\_?

3) My father has \_\_\_\_\_ bought a bike. I don't need a new one.

4) Have the children tidied their rooms \_\_\_\_\_?Yes, They have \_\_\_\_\_ tidied them.

5) Sir, this is our school. Yes, I have \_\_\_\_\_\_ learnt.

6) Are the students in the class? No, they have \_\_\_\_\_\_ gone home.

### C- Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect in the correct form.

- A: Is it snowing at the moment? B: No, \_\_\_\_\_\_(it /just / stop).
   I can't find my keys, \_\_\_\_\_\_(you / see / them?).
   A: Where's your workbook? B: I don't know. \_\_\_\_\_\_(it / disappear).
   You look thinner. \_\_\_\_\_\_(you / lose) weight).
   A: Is Rüştü enjoying his new job? B: I don't know. \_\_\_\_\_\_(I / not / hear) from him.
  - ☺ I am in Istanbul for two years.

<sup>☺</sup> I have been in Istanbul for two years.

-<del>\}</del>

It means "I am still in Istanbul".

### **BEEN / GONE**

Examples: A: Where is your father? B: He's *gone* to work. (he i

(he is at work now)

I have been to Istanbul twice this month. (I went and came back)

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Complete the following sentences using "been" or "gone".

1) My father is on holiday. He's \_\_\_\_\_\_ to Antalya.

2) The director has \_\_\_\_\_\_ out. He will be at school at five.

3) I want to see Alanya Castle. I have never \_\_\_\_\_\_ there before.

4) This is my first time. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ to a football stadium before.

5) How long have you \_\_\_\_\_ in this city?

6) Sorry. My mother isn't at home. She's \_\_\_\_\_\_shopping.

7) The bride and the groom have \_\_\_\_\_\_ to honeymoon. They're returning tomorrow.

8) My father has never \_\_\_\_\_\_ to Paris.

9) The children have \_\_\_\_\_\_ to school. They will be back at 5:00.

10) The President has \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the U.S.A. He is in Germany now.

### B- Correct the mistakes in the following sentences if necessary.

1) Have you already finished your breakfast?

2) She has ever been to a zoo before?

3) They have waited at the station for two o'clock.

4) My parents has been to Australia twice.

5) I haven't seen my sister already.

6) My grandparents are married for fifty-five years.

7) How long is she married to that footballer?

8) I know Jennifer for a very long time

 $\textcircled{\times}$  She left the room without to say "good-bye".

She left the room without saying "good-bye".



After the preposition "without", we normally use a gerund.



### C- Answer the following questions as in the example.

Example: How long have you learned English? I've learned English for three years.

- 1) How long have your parents been married?
- 2) How long have you known your best friend?

3) How long have you used this book?

4) How long has your father had his car?

5) How long has your father worked in the same place?

# **D-** Look at Alican's weekend checklist. Write about what he's done and what he hasn't done. You can use "already" or "yet".

Tidy the room	$\checkmark$	He has already tidied his room
Do the homework	Х	He hasn't done his homework yet.
Play football	$\checkmark$	
Take the dog for a walk	Х	
Clean the car	$\checkmark$	
Watch the match on TV	Х	
Visit grandparents	$\checkmark$	

### E- Write the present, past or past participle forms of these verbs. Check your answers from the list of irregular verbs.

go			say		<u> </u>
		bought			driven
	came			took	
leave			cut		

### F- Put in has/have been or has/have gone.

- David: I saw you in Erze's Restaurant yesterday

   Jack : No, it wasn't me. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_there.

   David: Mark and Spencer are on holiday, aren't they? Where \_\_\_\_\_\_they \_\_\_\_\_?

   Jack : To Turkey, again.

   David: How many times \_\_\_\_\_\_they \_\_\_\_\_there?
- Jack: This is their second visit.

O My son caught two big fish yesterday.

<sup>(C)</sup> My son caught two big fishes yesterday.

When we talk about the "fish" individually, we can use it as countable.

# PRESENT PERFECT OR SIMPLE PAST TENSE

### EXERCISES

### A- Complete the following sentences.

1)	you e	ver		(be) to abroad?
				old friends yesterday.
3) Janet			(meet) h	er at a party last week.
				ree hours this morning.
5) I			(watch) Sha	akira on TV last night.
6) When she		_ (b	e) a child, she	(go) to Bolu.
7)	you		(visit) your	grandparents recently?
8) The Browns			(live) in the	same house since 1996.
9) John			(not see) his u	incle since he was born.
				y mend) the broken car.
11) They were wa	atching TV when	I _		(arrive) there.
12) When	ye	ou _		(post) the letters?
13) Sue	just		(meet) a really fai	ntastic boy at the party.
				room before breakfast?
15) I didn't see yo	ou yesterday. Wł	nere	you	(be)

### B- Put the words into correct order and make Simple Past or Present Perfect sentences.

1) She / German / study / at school / two years / for /

2) How long / for / study / when / at school / you / ? / the exam / you / were /	
3) What / you / languages / study / when / at school / you / ? /	 ?
4) I / that film / see / last year / twice /	·
5) You / send / an e-mail / your friend / to / this week / ? /	 ?
6) When / your father / house / leave / this morning / the / ? /	 ?
7) Your father / BMW / drive / a / ? / ever /	 ?
8) We / photographs / take / a lot of / last week / on holiday /	·
9) They / live / for / an apartment flat / a/ /in / long time /	•
10) Where / your friend / visit / lately / ? /	 ?
<ul> <li>My room is on upstairs.</li> <li>My room is upstairs.</li> <li><i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> - <i>W</i> -</li></ul>	

## THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

#### Affirmative \_\_\_\_\_

I have been working You have been working He has been working She has been working It has been working We have been working They have been working

#### **Negative**

I haven't been working You haven't been working He hasn't been working She hasn't been working It hasn't been working We haven't been working They haven't been working

#### Question

Have I been working? Have you been working? Has he been working? Has she been working? Has it been working? Have we been working? Have they been working?

We use The Present Perfect Continuous Tense for the action that

### A) Has just finished.

Example: She *has just been talking* to her friends.

### **B**) Finishes at the time of speaking.

Example: We *have just been discussing* the same subject.

### C) Is still in progress.

Example: My wife *has been washing* the dishes.

### D) Finished in the past but causes a situation in the present.

#### Example:

I'm tired. We have been playing football since 4 o'clock.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Complete the following sentences in the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

1) Let's have a rest. We	(work) for five hours.
2) The child lost his toy. He	(cry) for ten minutes.
3) He's bored. He	(study) since the morning.
4) The manager is worried. He	(wait) for the inspectors since last week.
5) Where have you been? I	(work) in the office since 10 o'clock.
6) The car broke down. Mr. Çakmak	(repair) it for 2 hours.
7) Two prisoners escaped from the prison. The Polic	ce (look for) for ten days.
8) The new couple bought a new house. They	(decorate) it for a week.

O I dream to buy a new car.

<sup>(C)</sup> I dream of buying a new car.

We use "of" after "dream".



- 9) My son is very happy. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ (play) with his new computer all week.
  10) Anna is late for the appointment. Mark \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for her for 3 hours.
  11) The Smiths are on holiday. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at the same hotel for ten days.
- 12) I think, there is someone in the garden. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ (bark) for 5 minutes.

### **B-** Rewrite the following sentences in Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

1) I became an English teacher fourteen years ago.
2) Paul is studying. He started in the morning.
3) Nur lives in Sapanca since she was born.
3) Nur lives in Sapanca since she was born.
4) They started the basketball match twenty minutes ago.
5) The students are answering the questions. The exam started at 10: 30. since 10: 30.

### C- Complete the dialogues in Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

 Alp: You can speak English very well!. Cenk: Yes (/ I / study / it / six years /) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 Arda: You look very tired. ilayda: Yes (/ I / play / in the park / morning /) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 Lokman: Do you live in the same house? Murat: Yes (/ we / live / the same house / ten years /) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 Tom: Where is your father? I haven't seen him for two weeks. Jane: Yes (/ he/ work / another city / two weeks/) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
 Peter: You are good at tennis! Anna: Yes (/ I / play / tennis / five years /) \_\_\_\_\_\_.
 Ask questions for the underlined words.

# 1) They have been painting the house since the morning.

a-	?
b-	?
c-	 ?

- 🙁 My daughter dresses up quickly and leaves home.
- <sup>(c)</sup> My daughter gets dressed quickly and leaves home.

We use "get dressed" when we talk about daily clothes.

2) She has been typing letters for two hours.	
a	?
b	?
C	?
3) Laura has been talking to <u>Peter</u> at the cafe since 8 o'clock. a-	?
b	?
C	?

### **E-Answer the following questions.**

1) How long have you been learning English?

2) How long has your English teacher been teaching you?

3) How long has your father been working in the same place?

4) How long have you been living in the same house?

5) What have you been reading since the morning?

6) How long have you been using a computer?

7) Who has been learning how to play the keyboards in your class?

8) Where have you been looking at for five minutes?

9) How long has the Prime Minister been governing Turkey?

### F- Use "Present Perfect Continuous Tense or "Present Perfect Simple Tense"

1) Look! Somebody		(break) the window of your car.
2) I	(prepare) the examination but	yet.
3) The secretary	(write) letters. She	ten up to now.
4) How long		(read) that book? Is it exciting?
5) How many books	Orhan Pamuk	? (write)
6) You	_ (fish) since the morning. How many	fish ? (catch)
7) The students	(save) e	nough money to go on holiday?
8) How many times		(you / play) football this week?

O The woman got dressed and went to the party.

<sup>(C)</sup> The woman dressed up and went to the party.



When we put on a dress for a ceremony or a party, we use "dress up".

## **"THE" DEFINITE ARTICLE**

We use "the" when so Examples:	mething is unique.	
<i>The</i> earth	The Black Sea	The River Amazon
We use "the" before the	he places if it refers to a	certain place, or a place mentioned before.
Examples:	-	
<i>The</i> students are My friend went		heir school) te hospital)
	rdinal numbers and suj	perlatives.
Examples:	of the year is Ianuary	
	of the year is January. difficult problem I've ev	ver solved
We use "the" before si Examples:	ingular nouns to refer t	o a particular class of animals or things.
-	he largest animal.	The whale is in danger.
names of families. Examples: The rich must he		o a class of person, before nationalities, and <i>The</i> young must respect <i>the</i> old.
islands, plural names Examples:	of countries, deserts, an	ceans, mountain ranges, rivers, group of d musical instruments The Canary Islands, The U.S.A., The Sahara.
We use "the" before "	cinema", "radio", "the	atre".
Examples:	, ,	
People go to the	cinema at the weekend.	I want to go to the theatre next week.
EXERCISE		
A- Put "a", "an" or "t	ha" whore necessary	
	king ats	ky in the clear weather.
		ow we swim in swimming pool.
3) apple is	fruit.	_ apples you bought yesterday were delicious.
		d I like watching news on TV.
	most ex	
6) We have	_ summer house in	Black Sea region.
	most crowded	

7) They lived in \_\_\_\_\_ most crowded city in \_\_\_\_\_ U.S.A.

 $\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}$  The coach was angry at the footballers.

 $\bigcirc$  The coach was angry with the footballers.



We use "angry with people" but "angry at the things".

# **QUESTION TAGS**

# Question tags are short additions to sentences. They are used for asking for agreement or confirmation.

A negative sentenc Examples:	$e \longrightarrow$	a negative question tag. a positive question tag.			
You are a student,	aren't you?	She doesn't have	a baby, <i>does she?</i>		
When we use a negative	question tag	g, we expect an agreement.			
Example:		old yesterday, wasn't it?	Yes it was.		
When we use a positive q Example:	. 0	<b>g, we expect a confirmation.</b> not from Trabzon , <i>are you?</i>	No, I am not.		
When we use imperative	, we use "w	ill" with question tag.			
Example:		idy your room, won't you?			
When we use no one, anyone, nobody, anybody, everybody, neither everybody or none everyone, someone, somebody we use "they" as the subject of the tag. Examples: Nobody is in the classroom, <i>are they</i> ? Everybody was happy, <i>weren't they</i> ?					
When we use "let's", we use "shall" with question tag . Example: Let's go to the cinema, <i>shall we</i> ?					
* If the sentence has a ne question tag must be pos		d such as "never, rarely, seldo	om, nobody", the		

### EXERCISE

### A- Complete the questions with suitable question tags as in the examples.

1) They are teachers,	_?	Yes, they are.
2) They finished their homework	?	No, they didn't
3) A cheetah can run fast	_?	
4) Mr. Yılmaz has been to Germany	?	
5) You don't smoke ?		
6) They will paint their house	?	
7) The students must study hard	?	
8) Please, clean your classroom	?	
9) Let's take the children to the park	?	

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  Most people in Turkey travel with bus.

③ Most people in Turkey travel by bus.

-**Q**-

We always use "by car, bus, plane, taxi, etc.".

# USED TO

### We use "used to" for something happened regularly in the past and no longer happens now.

Examples: I used to work in Amasya but I work in Sapanca now. My father used to smoke cigarette but he doesn't smoke now. Our office *used to* be a house two years ago.

### We use "didn't use to" for something didn't happen in the past.

Examples:

We didn't *use to* live in a flat.

She didn't use to travel by car. I didn't *use to* eat vegetable when I was a child. I didn't *use to* have a car.

### We use "used to" to ask about the habits or routines of someone in the past.

Examples:

Did you use to travel by bus last year? Did you use to like reading when you were child?

#### We use "be used to" for activities which take place now or we are accustomed to doing. Examples:

I am *used to* going to bed late. = I go to bed late and it is not strange for me. They are *used to* going jogging = They always go jogging.

### A- Complete the following sentences using "used to".

- I \_\_\_\_\_(drive) an Opel but I drive a Renault now.
   They \_\_\_\_\_(live) in a flat but they live in a house now.
- 3) He (smoke) a lot but he doesn't smoke anymore.

### B- Look at the table and make sentences as in the example.

	TEN YEARS AGO	NOW
	He was a student.	He is a teacher.
	He played football.	He plays tennis.
	He didn't have a car.	He has a car.
	He had a few friends.	He has a lot of friends.
	He played the guitar.	He plays the keyboard.
	Example:	
	He used to be a student but he is a teacher	now.
1)		
2)		

### 3) \_\_\_\_\_

4) \_\_\_\_\_

### O Some students go to school by foot.

Some students go to school on foot.

We always use "on foot".

# **COULD / BE ABLE TO**

### "Could" is used as the past form of can.

Examples:

When I was in Istanbul, I *could* go to the theatre every month. My son *couldn't* stay at home alone when he was 7. *Could* you speak English when you were ten?

# We use "could" especially with the verbs related to senses. "see, hear, smell, feel, remember, understand".

Examples: My father *could* see very well ten years ago. I *couldn't* hear you. Please, speak louder.

### We use "be able to" in different tenses.

Examples: I may *be able to* finish it tomorrow. They will *be able to* go to the match. They bought tickets.

### "was able to" means "manage to".

Examples:

I was able to solve the problem. = I managed to solve this problem. Our team was able to win the match. = They managed to win the match.

### EXERCISE

### A- Complete the following sentences with "could", "couldn't" or "be able to".

1) I looked everywhere, but I \_\_\_\_\_\_ find my wallet.

2) I wasn't very thirsty. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ finish the juice.

3) There was a lot of work but she \_\_\_\_\_\_ finish it.

4) He \_\_\_\_\_\_ speak two languages when he was ten.

5) My grandfather\_\_\_\_\_ walk very fast when he was young.

- 6) The man \_\_\_\_\_\_ buy anything he wanted. He was very rich.
- 7) The prisoners \_\_\_\_\_\_ escape from the prison last month.
- 8) The students will \_\_\_\_\_\_ finish their exam in time.
- 9) Mike Tyson \_\_\_\_\_\_ beat anybody.
- 10) Everybody in the building \_\_\_\_\_\_ escape from the fire.

<sup>(C)</sup> The boy came to school on a bicycle.



We use "on a donkey, on horse back, on a motorbike".



## **REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

Subject	Object	Possessive	Reflexive
Ι	me	my	myself
You	you	your	yourself
He	him	his	himself
She	her	her	herself
It	it	its	itself
We	us	our	ourselves
You	You	Your	Yourselves
They	them	their	themselves

Examples: My son finished his homework *himself*. The students will decide the colour of the uniform *themselves*. The baby turned the lamp off *itself* 

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Complete the following sentences using reflexive pronouns.

1) Mrs. Brown can't clean the house	, because it is too big.
-------------------------------------	--------------------------

2) The cat was looking at \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the mirror.

3) I promised \_\_\_\_\_\_ not to go there.

4) The guests can help \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the party.

5) Some people don't think about others. They only think about \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6) We went to fun fair yesterday. We enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 7) My brother repairs his car \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) If I think something in my mind, I talk to \_\_\_\_\_.

9) My daughter is sixteen but she wants to go on holiday \_\_\_\_\_\_.

10) Their dog was lost but it could find the way \_\_\_\_\_

- 11) My daughter can get dressed \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 12) The soldiers can't move \_\_\_\_\_\_ without their commander's permission.

13) I am sure, he will solve this problem \_\_\_\_\_.

14) My electric heater closes \_\_\_\_\_\_ when the heat is over 30  $^{\circ}$ C

15) Look at the lonely man. He is talking to\_\_\_\_\_

 $\textcircled{\ensuremath{\overline{\odot}}}$  The team was composed from thirty players.

<sup>(i)</sup> The team was composed of thirty players.

When "compose" means; consist, we use "compose of".

	Hüseyin	Can	Ceren	
Pick up toys	$\checkmark$	Х	✓	
Put on clothes	Х	X	✓	
Go to toilet	X ✓	✓ ✓	X 🖌	
Have lunch Turn on TV	✓ X	✓ ✓		
Examples: Hüseyin and Cer Can can't pick u	p the toys himsel	lf		
<ol> <li>Hüseyin and Can</li> <li>Ceren</li> </ol>				
2) Hüseyin and Ceren _				
Can				
3) They				
) Can and Ceren				
5) Hüseyin				
	the kitchen. If y	ou and Dorug are	e hungry, you car	1 help
1) There's some cake in	the kitchen. If y	Ju allu Delya alt		
	•	•	and my friend car	n help
2) I can help my friend a	and my friend ca	•	and my friend ca	n help
2) I can help my friend a 3) Ümit and Mustafa liv	and my friend ca	n help me. So I a		n help
<ul> <li>2) I can help my friend a</li> <li>3) Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>4) Who are those girls?</li> <li>5) We didn't go to Gönü</li> </ul>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part	n help me. So I a	 ? ite	
<ul> <li>2) I can help my friend a</li> <li>3) Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>4) Who are those girls?</li> <li>5) We didn't go to Gönü</li> </ul>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part	n help me. So I a	 ? ite	
<ul> <li>2) I can help my friend a</li> <li>3) Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>4) Who are those girls?</li> <li>5) We didn't go to Gönü</li> <li>5) When we go on holid</li> <li>7) Leonardo and Maria</li> </ul>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part lay, we always en were at school to	n help me. So I a y. She didn't inv njoy ogether but they i	 ? ite never saw	  as now.
<ol> <li>I can help my friend a</li> <li>Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>Who are those girls?</li> <li>We didn't go to Gönü</li> <li>When we go on holid</li> <li>Leonardo and Maria</li> <li>Mehmet and I are ver</li> </ol>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part lay, we always en were at school to ry good friends. Y	n help me. So I a y. She didn't inv njoy ogether but they n We've known	 ? ite never saw	 as now. for ten years
<ol> <li>There's some cake in</li> <li>I can help my friend a</li> <li>Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>Who are those girls?</li> <li>We didn't go to Gönü</li> <li>When we go on holid</li> <li>Leonardo and Maria</li> <li>Mehmet and I are ver</li> <li>Did you see Fatih and</li> </ol>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part lay, we always en were at school to ry good friends. V d Ünal at the part	n help me. So I a y. She didn't inv njoy ogether but they n We've known ty? Yes, but I c	? ite never saw lidn't speak to	 as now. for ten years
<ul> <li>2) I can help my friend a</li> <li>3) Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>4) Who are those girls?</li> <li>5) We didn't go to Gönü</li> <li>6) When we go on holid</li> <li>7) Leonardo and Maria</li> <li>8) Mehmet and I are ver</li> <li>9) Did you see Fatih and</li> </ul>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part lay, we always en were at school to ry good friends. V d Ünal at the part	n help me. So I a y. She didn't inv njoy ogether but they n We've known ty? Yes, but I c	? ite never saw lidn't speak to	 as now. for ten years
<ul> <li>2) I can help my friend a</li> <li>3) Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>4) Who are those girls?</li> <li>5) We didn't go to Gönü</li> <li>6) When we go on holid</li> <li>7) Leonardo and Maria</li> <li>8) Mehmet and I are ver</li> </ul>	and my friend ca ve near Do you know il's wedding part lay, we always en were at school to ry good friends. V d Ünal at the part	n help me. So I a y. She didn't inv njoy ogether but they n We've known ty? Yes, but I c when the	 ? ite never saw hever saw lidn't speak to ey're alone.	 as now. for ten years
<ul> <li>2) I can help my friend a</li> <li>3) Ümit and Mustafa liv</li> <li>4) Who are those girls?</li> <li>5) We didn't go to Gönü</li> <li>6) When we go on holid</li> <li>7) Leonardo and Maria</li> <li>8) Mehmet and I are ver</li> <li>9) Did you see Fatih and</li> <li>10 Many people talk to</li> </ul>	and my friend ca ye near Do you know il's wedding part lay, we always en were at school to ry good friends. Y d Ünal at the part mgratulated the st	n help me. So I a y. She didn't inv njoy ogether but they n We've known ty? Yes, but I c when the	 ? ite never saw lidn't speak to ey're alone. great success.	 as now. for ten years

# **IF CLAUSES**

### **Conditional Type 0**

# We use Type 0 for habitual or automatic results, general truths and laws of nature, and cause and effect.

Examples: If you heat ice, it melts. (General truth)

Present Simple Present Simple

If <u>you work a lot</u>, <u>you get tired</u>. (cause and effect) If <u>the clouds get darker</u>, <u>it rains</u>. (automatic result) If <u>I go swimming</u>, <u>I take my sun oil</u>. (habitual action)

### In Type 0 if means when or whenever.

Whenever I go to Bursa, I eat iskender. (If I go to Bursa, I eat iskender) When they come to school, we serve them Nescafe. (If they come to school we serve them Nescafe)

### We can use imperatives with if clause Type 0

If you are thirsty, drink some water. If you have a headache, take a painkiller. If she is cold, don't open the window. If you see Kemal, tell him to phone me.

### **EXERCISES**

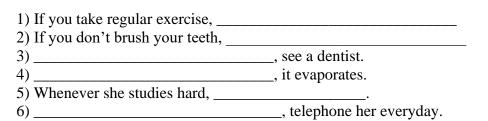
### A- Complete the following sentences in conditional Type 0 using the verbs in brackets.

- 1) If you\_\_\_\_\_ (heat) water at 100°C, it \_\_\_\_\_ (boil).
- 2) If she \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) a lot of money everyday, she \_\_\_\_\_ (run) out of money.
- 3) If the governor \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to our school, we \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) him at the gate.
- 4) When the autumn \_\_\_\_\_ (come), the trees \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) down their leaves.
- 5) If he \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) too much, he \_\_\_\_\_ (get) fat.
- 6) (not drink) \_\_\_\_\_ the tea, if you\_\_\_\_\_ (not like) it.
- 7) When you \_\_\_\_\_(cross) the street at red light the police \_\_\_\_\_ (punish) you.

<sup>(C)</sup> The tables were covered with dust.

We use "cover with mud, snow, cloth, etc.".

### **B-** Complete the following sentences in conditional Type 0



#### First Conditional

### We use the First Conditional to express real or very probable situations in the present or future.

Examples: If he earns a lot of money, he will buy me a new car.  $\overline{}$ 

Present Simple

Future

If she doesn't hurry, she will be late for school.

If they invite me to their wedding, I will give them a bunch of flowers.

### We can use modals in the First Conditional.

Examples:

If you want to be successful, you must study hard.

If the students listen to their teacher carefully, they can understand the lesson easily.

If she finishes her meal, she may leave the table.

If you drive at night, you should be very careful.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Complete the following sentences in First Conditional using the verbs in brackets.

1) If it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hot tomorrow, we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on a picnic.

2) If she \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the university exam, her life \_\_\_\_\_ (change).

3) The passengers can have a rest if they \_\_\_\_\_ (be) too tired.

4) If the director \_\_\_\_\_ (telephone) me, I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) him the problem.

5) If my father \_\_\_\_\_ (come) here, I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) him to the optician.

6) You \_\_\_\_\_ learn English if you \_\_\_\_\_ (attend) a course.

7) If Angela \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) any money, she \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) on holiday.

8) If he forgets to buy a present for his wife's bithday\_\_\_\_\_.

Hy friend's daughter was cured from anaemia.

<sup>(c)</sup> My friend's daughter was cured of anaemia.

We use "cure of an illness".

### **B-** Match the following sentences.

a) I will buy a new car.	1) If I finish this book.	
b) If she comes home late	2) If she has a lot of homework.	
c) If he invites me to the party.	3) Her father will get angry with her.	
d) We will make a snowman.	4) The dog will catch the cat.	
e) I will be very happy.	5) If I earn a lot of money.	
f) If he comes to the power.	6) I will go with my girlfriend.	
g) Nurbanu won't watch TV.	7) You will feel better.	
h) If it runs faster.	8) He will decrease the inflation.	
i) If you go to bed early.	9) We can visit the historical places.	
j) If we have time.	10) If it snows a lot.	
a b c d e f	g h i j	

### **C-** Complete the following sentences in First Conditional.

1) If I miss the school bus,			
2) If a child touches the stove,			
3) If I am not busy.			
4) Fenerbahçe will win the cup			
5), the trainer will motivate them.			
6) If they ask our opinion about economy,			
7) We will change the copier next year			
8), I will switch off my mobile phone.			
9) If he doesn't obey the rules,			
10) If she tells the same story again			
He will not buy a new car <u>if</u> his father <u>doesn't</u> help him. He will not buy a new car <u>unless</u> his father helps him. * <b>unless</b> = <b>if</b> not			
D- Complete the following sentences in First Conditional using "unless" or "if".			
1) You'll miss the train you get up early.			
2) you see my son, can you tell him to come home at once?			

- 3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ it rains, we will go swimming in the lake.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ you pay the fine, you will go to prison.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ you leave the key on the door, they won't clean your room.

# $\bigcirc$ My mother died from heart-attack.

③ My mother died of heart-attack.

We use "die of an illness, hunger".

120



- 6) You may have an accident \_\_\_\_\_ you don't drive carefully.
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_\_ she helps me, I can finish the project.
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ you don't come in time, we'll leave without you.
- 9) We will visit the Eiffel Tower \_\_\_\_\_\_ we go to Paris.
- 10) \_\_\_\_\_ you leave now, I'll call the police.

### **E-Answer the following questions.**

- 1) What will you buy if you go to your friend's birthday party?
- 2) What will happen if we cut down the forest?
- 3) How long will you stay if you go on holiday?
- 4) How much will she pay if she buys that shirt?
- 5) Who will meet them if the guests arrive at the airport?
- 6) If you go to Ankara, who will you visit?
- 7) If they go abroad, which country will they go?
- 8) If you take this exam, when will you learn the result?
- 9) When will you come back if you go to the seminar?
- 10) What time will you meet your friends if you decide to go to the cinema?

### **Second Conditional**

We use Second Conditional to give advice and to talk about imaginary situation which are contrary to the facts in present.

- If I had time I would wash the dishes
  - S. Past Would

If you came earlier, you could get a ticket. If they telephoned home, they might come late. If I were you, I wouldn't paint the house red. We could finish the work if he were here. If I were older, I could drive a car.

😕 Most of the students failed from English last term.

OMOST OF the students failed in English last term.



We always use "fail in" for subjects.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Complete the following sentences in Second Conditional using the verbs in brackets.

 1) The students \_\_\_\_\_\_ (not be) very happy if they \_\_\_\_\_\_ (get) low mark.

 2) If I \_\_\_\_\_\_ (know) his address, I \_\_\_\_\_\_ (send) him an invitation card.

 3) They \_\_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new car if they \_\_\_\_\_\_ (have) enough money.

 4) What \_\_\_\_\_\_ your father \_\_\_\_\_\_ (do) if his car \_\_\_\_\_\_ (break down) on the road?

 5) If she \_\_\_\_\_\_ (have) a key, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (get) into the house.

 6) If the hotel \_\_\_\_\_\_ (be) good, they \_\_\_\_\_\_ (stay) longer.

 7) If there \_\_\_\_\_\_ (not be) any wars, life \_\_\_\_\_\_ (be ) better.

 8) If she \_\_\_\_\_\_ (have) more time, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ (write) more exercises.

 9) My children \_\_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV if there \_\_\_\_\_\_ (be) a good film on TV.

 10) Our team \_\_\_\_\_\_ (play) the final if they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (win) this match.

### **B-** Complete the following sentences in Second Conditional.

1) I would buy that dress		
2) She would call the police		
3) We could understand the teacher better		
4) If Tim weren't so selfish,		
5) They wouldn't get wet		
6) Life would be more exciting		
7) If I wanted to learn Italian,		
8) The Browns would invite all their friends		
9) The air wouldn't be so polluted		
10) If I had a good camera,		

### C- Complete these sentences using a zero, first or second conditional.

1) If you to go bed late,		
2) If you freeze water,		
3) If you feel ill,		
4) When the lesson ends,		
5) When students do well in their test,		
6) If you go to New York,		
7) If I met the President,		
8) I'd be much happier if		
9) Lessons would be more interesting if		
10) I'll have a party if		

O The conference hall was full with students.

<sup>(C)</sup> The conference hall was full of students.



We use "full of people, water, animals, etc.".

### **C- Match the following sentences**

would call him.
veryone would laugh at me.
I were them.
here wouldn't be life on the earth.
I had a camera.
she told me about her problem.
hey could find the way easily.
e would attend the meeting.
we didn't have sincere friends.
wouldn't have to wait for a bus.

 $a.\dots \quad b.\dots \quad c.\dots \quad d.\dots \quad e.\dots \quad f.\dots \quad g.\dots \quad h.\dots \quad i.\dots \quad j.\dots$ 

### **D-** Answer the following questions

1) Which country would you choose if you decided to live abroad?

2) What would you do if you were a rich man/woman?

3) What three things would you take with you if you went to live on a deserted island?

4) What changes would you do in your room if you had a lot of money?

5) If your father changed his job, which job would he choose?

6) If you bought a house, where would you buy it?

7) Which famous person would you like to be if you had the chance?

8) What would you do if you saw your house on fire?

9) If you were the President, what would you change?

10) Who would you like to act with if you were an actor or an actress?

11) Which team would you play for if you were a footballer?

12) If you wrote a book what would you write about?

B He promised lending his bike tomorrow.

<sup>(C)</sup> He promised to lend his bike tomorrow.



We use "promise to do something".

### **Third Conditional**

We use type 3 to express criticism or regrets. It is also used to express imaginary situations which were not true in the past.

The students didn't study hard and they failed. If they had studied harder, they wouldn't have failed.

Past Perfectwouldn't have past participleExample:She didn't have breakfast and she fainted.

If she had had breakfast, she wouldn't have fainted

### **EXERCISES:**

### **A-** Complete the following sentences in Third Conditional.

1) If I had gone to safari in Africa,
2) If they hadn't been so tired,
3) If she hadn't drunk so much, .
4) Mr. Kaya wouldn't have married his wife
5) If they had seen the dirty plates before,
6) She might have died in the accident
7) If the government had taken some measures,
8) If the window hadn't been open,
9) If his bike hadn't broken down,
10) There wouldn't have been cavities in his teeth

### **B-** Complete the following sentences in Third Conditional using the verbs in brackets.

1) If they	(ask) me, I	(lend) my car.
2) She	(not talk) to you if she	(find) out of the truth.
3) If Revivo	(not be) ill, he	(play) against Antalyaspor.
4) If the authorities	(not warn) them, they	(trap) in the burning house.
5) If Jade	(learn) how to use computer, she	(find) a job easily.
6) They	_ (not cancel) the match if it	(not rain) heavily before the game.
7) If he	(not steal) money from the bank, the	police (not arrest) him.
8) If the driver	(slow) down at the corner, he	(not crash) the tree.
9) If the cyclists	(have) mountain bikes, they	(climb) the mountain easily.
10) If Ümit Karan _	(pass) the ball to Serkan, h	e (score) the goal.

O The children were speaking as quiet as they could.

 $\bigcirc$  The children were speaking as quietly as they could.

"Quiet" is an adjective but "quietly" is an adverb.





### **C- Match the following sentences**

a) If he hadn't worked so hard	1) If we had gone fishing at the weekend.	
b) If I had seen him at school	2) If they had had time.	
c) We could have caught a lot of fish	3) If I had bought two loaves of bread.	
d) It would have been enough for us	4) You could have seen the news.	
e) I wouldn't have got wet	5) I would have given his book.	
f) If you had read the day's newspaper	6) She would have helped me a lot.	
g) If James hadn't been so busy	7) If I had taken my umbrella.	
h) If my mother had been alive	8) He couldn't have bought that house.	
i) They would have gone there	9) He could have given the conference.	
j) If he hadn't been very rich	10) He couldn't have stayed at good hotels	
a b c d e f	g h i j	

T

### **D- Rewrite the following sentences in Third Conditional**

1) I couldn't get there in time because there was a lot of traffic on the road.

2) We didn't set the alarm clock so we overslept.

3) Gülşah didn't buy that bag because she didn't have enough money.

4) I couldn't answer all the questions because I didn't have enough time.

5) You didn't read the questions carefully so you made a lot of mistakes.

6) We couldn't watch the match on TV because the power went off.

7) They didn't arrive the meeting in time because their car wasn't fast.

8) She couldn't find the mistakes because she didn't read carefully.

# E- Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words.

1) Go to Trabzon and you'll see the Sumela Monastry. (visit)

If \_\_\_\_\_\_, you will see the Sumela Monastry. 2) Terry doesn't have money so he can't buy a new mobile phone. (had) If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I'd buy a new mobile phone. 3) I don't have time to go to the Tarkan concert. (had)

If \_\_\_\_\_\_, I'd go to the concert.

- 4) Doing a lot of exercise makes you keep fit . (do) If \_\_\_\_\_\_ exercise, you keep fit.
  - O You resemble to my son.

Over the end of the en

-XV:

We don't use preposition after "resemble".

### SAPANCA OR "THE NATURAL BEAUTY"

Sapanca is situated on the east of Marmara region between Sakarya and Kocaeli. It is on the motorway. It's one of the beautiful towns of Turkey-a town where you can swim, go skiing, go trekking and have a picnic. It's really a peaceful town. It's not so crowded. Now it has a population of nearly 30,000.

The population comes from all over the country, including some foreigners from different countries who work in different factories in Sakarya and İzmit.

Sapanca has got a lake called with the same name. It has got lots of spectacular views. It's a town full of trees and colourful flowers. You can have a rest under the trees and among the flowers and drink 5 o'clock tea. It's only one and a half hour drive from Istanbul. You can go to Sapanca by train, too. Sapanca is famous for its lake, fruit gardens, forest and picnic areas. People from İstanbul, Sakarya, Kocaeli and other cities come to Sapanca at the weekends, to have fresh air and rest. There are a lot of fish farms and restaurants in Sapanca. People go there to eat fish and the nature embraces them.

City forest, where green and blue meet, is the largest picnic area in the town. At the weekends, people from different cities go there to relax and swim in one of the cleanest lakes in Turkey. Soğucak plateau, which is fifteen kilometres away from the town, is ideal for trekking. It takes fifteen minutes to reach the plateau by car.

The weather in Sapanca is pleasant all year. It is usually sunniest in June, July and August. There isn't much snow in winter but it rains a lot in winter.

If you want to relax and have a good weekend, it's time to go to Sapanca.

### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) Sapanca has a population of 50,000.	$T$ $\Box$	F 🗆
2) It is very far from Istanbul.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
3) The lake is very clean.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
4) It's between Kocaeli and Sakarya.	$T$ $\Box$	F 🗆

#### **B-** Answer the following questions.

What is the population of Sapanca?
 How far is it from Istanbul?
 Where can people have a picnic ?
 Can you swim in Sapanca?
 How long does it take to go to Soğucak Plateau?

6) What can you do in Soğucak Plateau?

7) Where can you have a rest and drink tea?

8) Where can you eat fish?

O The girl is popular among her friends.

 $\bigcirc$  The girl is popular with her friends.



We always use "popular with" Turkish people, girls, boys, etc.

### FIREMEN RESCUED A FAMILY

Firemen pulled two men, a woman and three children out of rushing water in Mersin. The family got into trouble first. Their car drove off the road into the water. A truck driver almost died when he tried to save them.

The trouble started when Mr. Kaya lost control of his car on the road. The car fell down ten metres from the road into the water. All the people in the car were wearing their seatbelts, so nobody was hurt. However, they couldn't leave the car.

Truck driver's friend dialled 112. The rescue started immediately. The truck driver arrived before the firemen. He found a rope and he jumped into the water. He fastened the car with the rope and waited for the firemen.

Then, the firemen arrived. They put on special clothes they brought with them. Firstly, they pulled the people out through the windscreen. They saved the family and took them to the hospital.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) There were three people in the car.	$T \Box F \Box$	
2) Firemen pulled the family from fire.	T I F I	
3) A truck driver tried to save them.	T I F I	
4) Firemen put on special clothes.	T I F I	

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) How did the trouble start?	
2) Where did it happen?	
3) What were the people in the car wearing?	·
4) Could they leave the car?	
5) Who called 112 immediately?	
6) What did the firemen do first?	
7) Could they save the family?	
8) Where did they take the family?	
· · · ·	

O Two men were found guilty for killing the young woman.

<sup>(c)</sup> Two men were found guilty of killing the young woman.

• We use "guilty for murder, robbery, etc.". "guilty of doing something".

## ATATÜRK (THE FOUNDER OF THE TURKISH REPUBLIC)

Atatürk, the founder and the first President of the Turkish Republic, was born in Salonika in 1881. He was given the name Mustafa. His father's name was Ali Riza Effendi and his mother's name was Zübeyde Hanım.

Mustafa went to the army academy when he was 12 and was commissioned as an officer in the army at 21. While he was still a young officer, he formed a secret committee to fight against government corruption.

During World War I, Turkey joined the Germans. At the end of the war, the Empire was stopped of its territories, and the Allies were making plans to come up Turkey itself into independent states and they occupied territories. But Atatürk; now a general in the Turkish Army, had the support of the Turkish People: He drove back the allied forces. He founded the Republic of Turkey and served as its first President from 1923 until his death. Later he was called Gazi Mustafa Kemal Pasha. The Turkish Grand National Assembly gave him the surname Atatürk, which means "Father Turk" or "Father of Turks", in 1933.

At once he began reforming Turkey. Amazing reforms in the Turkish political, social, economical and religious life took place under his forceful leadership. He gave Turkish women their freedom and abolished some customs. He outlawed polygamy. He eliminated corruption, improved public education and introduced the Roman alphabet for the Turkish language.

Six principles guiding Mustafa Kemal lead his people into the modern political world: Nationalism, Secularism, Populism, Etatism, Republicanism and Revolutionism.

In a speech he made to university students, Ataturk once said:

"The tasks of the Turkish nation, of the Republic and of Turkish nationalism have not yet been completed. It is you who are to complete them. Repeat my words to those who come after you. This is not just my personal wish: it is also the desire of the Turkish nation. Never tire of repeating what I have said to you to the generations to come. The watchword shall be: advancement. Noble Turk, there shall never be a limit to your advancement."

He died at 9:05 am, November 10, 1938.

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where and when was Atatürk born?
- 2) When was he commissioned as an officer?
- 3) What were the Allies planning?
- 4) When did he found the Republic of Turkey?
- 5) Who gave him the surname "Atatürk"?
- 6) What does Atatürk mean?
- 7) What are the Atatürk's principles?
- 8) When did he die?
  - O I had great difficulty to find the address.
  - $\bigcirc$  I had great difficulty in finding the address.

. We use "have difficulty in doing something".



### **PEN FRIEND**

Main Road, 23/3 Kuşadası 18<sup>th</sup> April

Dear Liz,

My name is Gönül Çelen and I am 17. I'm from Kuşadası in Aydın. Kuşadası is one of the most popular centres. It's on the Aegean coast. In summer it's full of tourists.

I live with my parents in a house by the sea. My mother's name is Ayşe, and she is a dentist. My father's name is Mehmet, and he is a doctor. They are very busy. My brother's name is Ali. He is twenty years old, and he is a university student. I am a student at a private college. My favourite subject is English. I am going to take the university exam in June. I want to be a journalist.

I like living by the sea and I spend most of my time on the beach. I love swimming and chatting to friends. I like pop music very much and my favourite pop singer is Teoman.

What's life like in your town? Tell me about you and your family.

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Best wishes. Gönül.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) Kuşadası is a touristic place.	$T \square$	F□
2) Gönül can speak English.	$T \square$	F□
3) She is a university student.	$T \square$	F□
4) She doesn't like music.	$T$ $\Box$	F□

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) What's Gönül's job?	
2) Does she like living in Kuşadası?	
3) Does she often see her parents?	
4) Where does she spend most of her time?	
5) Who is her favourite singer?	
6) Who does she live with?	
7) How old is her brother?	
8) Does she want to learn about Liz?	

O It is difficult to fill the university entrance exam form.

O It is difficult to fill in the university entrance exam form.

We use "fill in a form" in British English.

### THE WRECKAGE

On a sunny day, a house fell in. The man was having construction workers add a new room to his house. The workers were not there when it happened. They were taking a break.

People asked the owner of the house: "What were you doing when the house fell in?"

He answered; "I and my children were talking in the garden and my wife was preparing the lunch when we heard a loud noise."

The owner's wife and children were crying while their father was talking to the people. The woman said: "I was preparing the lunch when I heard some noise and rushed out of the house. As soon as I left the house, it collapsed. I didn't know what to do. My husband tried to calm me down while I was crying."

It was our first house so it was very important for us. Thank God nobody was injured.

Neighbours came together to find a way to help the family. They decided to rebuild the house and to put them up as guests in their home until they built the new house. The family was very happy and the man said: "A friend in need is a friend indeed."

### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) Two people were injured.	$T \square$	F□
2) They were building a new room.	$T \square$	F □
3) Children were in the garden.	$T \square$	F □
4) The neighbours weren't friendly.	Т 🗆	F□

#### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) What was the weather like?	
2) What was the woman doing when it collapsed?	
3) Who tried to calm down the woman?	
4) What did the people ask the man?	
5) What were the workers doing when it collapsed?	
6) Why was the house so important for them?	
7) What did the man say in the end?	
8) What did the woman do when she heard some noise?	

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  In our bedroom, there was an alive lizard.

<sup>(C)</sup> In our bedroom, there was a live lizard.

- When we talk about animals, things; we use "live". A live football match, etc..

### THE ACCIDENTS

Drive carefully and slowly when you are driving in the streets, particularly in crowded shopping streets. When you see a bus or a car stopped, watch out for people coming from behind parked or stopped cars or from the places you might not be able to see them.

Seventy-five percent of pedestrians died or seriously injured are children or old people. They may not guess the speed very well, and may step into the road when the drivers do not expect them. Don't forget that; blind or disabled people need more time to cross the road.

Drive slowly near schools, and parks, and look out for children getting on or off school buses and coming out of the park.

When coming to a zebra crossing, be ready to slow down or stop to let people cross. Give signal to other drivers that you mean to slow down. Never overtake just before a zebra crossing.

### EXERCISES

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) Seventy percent of pedestrians were killed.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
2) Disabled people need more time to cross.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
3) You needn't drive slowly near a park.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
4) You mustn't overtake before a zebra crossing.	$T$ $\Box$	$F \square$

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) Where must you drive carefully particularly?
2) What must you do when you see a car stopped?
3) What must you look out for near schools or parks?
4) Can the children or old people guess the speed well?
5) What must you do before a zebra crossing?
6) What do you mean when you give signal?
7) What mustn't you do before a zebra crossing?
8) What percent of pedestrians are killed or injured?

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  They met the girl at the airport at her arrival in Istanbul.

<sup>(c)</sup> They met the girl at the airport on her arrival in Istanbul.



We use "on" before someone's arrival.

### HAYDARPAŞA STATION

Haydarpaşa Station, in Istanbul, is the biggest and the busiest railway station of Turkey. Thousands of passengers use it everyday. It is very busy between 7 and 9 in the morning and between 5 and 7 in the afternoon. Most people go to work by train. Some of the trains go to different cities in Anatolia. The Anatolian Express, the Blue Express, the Lake Van Express are the most modern trains. They are much more comfortable than the other trains.

At Haydarpaşa Station there are a lot of problems everyday. Some people lose their luggage, some children get lost, and some people have their wallets stolen. There are some pickpockets at the station. That's why, a lot of policemen and security guards patrol in the station. The police always warn the people to be careful. There are a lot of telephone boxes at the station and they are always busy. All the time, people try to get tickets, want to learn about fares and the time of trains to different places. In every fifteen minutes a train departs from the station and another arrives. It is always noisy because of the noise of trains, people, salesmen and the whistle of conductors.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) It's very peaceful at Haydarpaşa Station.	$T \square$	F□
2) Blue express is very comfortable.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
3) A lot of security guards patrol there.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
4) There are some thieves at the station.	$T \ \Box$	F□

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) Why do the police warn the people?	
2) When is the station very busy?	·
3) How often does a train depart from the station?	
4) How often does a train arrive at the station?	
5) Are there any problems at the station?	
6) What do the people try to learn?	
7) What happens to some children?	
8) What do the policemen and security guards do?	

⊖ My son always loses his belt.

<sup>(C)</sup> My son always looses his belt.

- "Loose" means; "to leave free" or "unfastened".

### FRIENDS

People often have to travel to the another cities to study or to work. Metin is going to get on the bus and travel to Istanbul for his new job. He is saying "goodbye" to his friends Baki and Cemil.

The three friends have known one another since their childhood. They have been friends for many years. They have lived in the same house for five years. They have studied and gone to school together. They have just finished the school and started to look for a job. Metin has found a new job in Istanbul. Baki has found a job in Ankara and Cemil has stayed in the same city, because he hasn't found a job yet.

They have been an important part of one another's lives, so it's difficult to say, "goodbye". For many years, they have shared everything; their good and bad times, hopes and feelings.

Three of them are very sorry and they are crying. They are promising one another to come together in every opportunity. They will miss each other very much and never forget the days they have spent together.

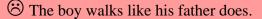
### **EXERCISES**

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) They have known each other for a short time.	$\Gamma \Box$	F□	
2) They have done everything all together.	Γ□	F□	
3) Baki has found a job in Istanbul.	Γ□	F□	
4) They are very happy now.	Γ□	F□	

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) Where have they lived for five years?	
2) Where has Baki found a job?	
3) Has Cemil found a job in Ankara?	
4) Why has Cemil stayed in the same city?	
5) Where are they now?	
6) Is Metin going to travel by train?	
7) Have they shared only good times?	
8) Why do people often have to travel to another cit	ies?



<sup>(C)</sup> The boy walks as his father does.

- "As" is used as conjunction and followed by a noun or pronoun.

### TRANSPORTATION

For many years in my village, horses used to be the only form of transportation. Before the age of modern trucks, cars, buses and trains, horses used to carry all the goods for trading. A horse often used to carry as much as 200 kilos and it could travel 50 kilometres a day. This form of transportation used to be so important that people took care of the horses like a member of the family.

Now, modern trucks, buses and trains travel all over the country. A truck can carry as much weight as 100 horses. In addition, people use special cars for their load. Refrigerator cars carry food and tanker cars carry oil.

Air travel has changed a lot, too. The first planes were big planes with one engine. The engines of the planes sometimes used to stop in the middle of the trip and a lot of people died. But now modern airplanes make air travel possible for everybody. Nowhere in the world is more than 20 hours away by jet. People never used to eat, sleep, read magazines or watch films on air planes.

In the future planes may travel to moon or to the other planets for a weekend holiday. Technology is improving incredibly.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) Horses used to be very important	$T \square$	F □
2) A horse used to carry more than a man.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
3) People didn't take care of horses.	$T$ $\Box$	F□
4) A lorry can carry tonnes of weight.	$T$ $\Box$	F□

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

- 1) What used to be the only form of transportation?

   2) How fast did the horse use to move?

   3) How much weight did the horses use to carry?

   4) How much weight can a modern truck carry?

   5) How did the people behave the horse?

   6) How were the first planes?

   7) Can we watch films on air planes now?

   8) Has transportation changed a lot?
  - $\textcircled{\begin{tmatrix} \hline \end{tmatrix}}$  Students believe their teacher.

Students believe in their teacher.

-**X**-

If you want to show faith, we always use "in" after believe.

### ANIMALS

A university professor has recently made several experiments with different animals to find out which was the most intelligent. He found out that the monkey was more intelligent than the other animals.

In one experiment, the professor put a monkey in a room where there were several small boxes. Some boxes were inside other boxes. One small box had some food inside of it. The professor wanted to watch the monkey and to find out how long it would take the monkey to find the food. The professor left the room. He waited a few minutes outside the door. Then he kneeled down and put his eye to the keyhole. What did he see? To his surprise, he found himself looking directly into the eye of the monkey. The monkey was on the other side of the door, looking at the professor through the keyhole .

Nowadays, dogs are used for different aims. The police use the dogs to find out drugs. The dogs are also used to find out the lost people, or the people under the wreckage. Dolphins help the sailors to find their way. Animals help people a lot.

### **EXERCISES**

### A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

1) The monkeys are as intelligent as other animals.	$T \square$	F□
2) There weren't any food in the boxes.	Τ□	F□
3) Professor waited for a few minutes.	$T \square$	F□
4) Dolphins help people.	Τ□	F□

### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1) Why did the professor do some experiments?	
2) Where did the professor put the monkey?	
3) How long did the professor wait?	
4) Do the animals help people?	
5) Why are the dogs used nowadays?	
6) How do the dolphins help sailors?	
7) What other aims are the dogs used for?	
8) What was the monkey doing on the other side of	E the door?

# $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$ Are you pleased from our service?

<sup>(C)</sup> Are you pleased with our service?

We always use "pleased with".

### EROSION

Erosion has a great impact on the geology of a planet. It wears rock and soil away and changes the landscape. Agents of erosion include water, ice, wind, and chemical action.

Erosion breaks up rocks and moves sand and stones. It wears down mountains and fills valleys with finely ground sediment and sand. Over long periods of time the products of erosion can become rock again

Rain drops are formed when water vapour in the air condenses around tiny dust particles or ice crystals. Clouds form as the drops of water grow. As rain falls, it returns evaporated water to the surface of the planet, scattering it over the land masses so that plants can grow nearly everywhere on earth.

Rainfall on earth varies between almost none to over 200 inches a year. Humans live in places with 20 inches or more of rainfall a year, though they can survive with less if they use irrigation or very special dry land farming practices that capture water and deliver it to the roots of their crop

When rain falls on the ground some of it soaks into the soil. It moistens the soil particles and makes them easier to move. A heavy rain will stir up the surface of the soil and make mud of the small particles. The water that is not absorbed runs off the soil, carrying a little of the soil with it.

Water flows downhill, and is always seeking a lower path. A small stream has more force than individual rain drops or melting snow. It begins to stir up larger particles and carry them away.

Rain seeps into the cracks, and when winter comes the water freezes. Freezing water expands, and it pushes the walls of the cracks apart, making the cracks wider.

Tides show erosion in action. The constant movement of the waves shows us how sand grains are tumbled, and the returning water traces miniature drainage channels in the sand. Waves also erode cliffs along the beaches. They undercut the cliffs, and eventually the cliffs fall. Wind picks up dust and sand. Sand storms can act like sand blasters if the wind is moving fast enough. Sometimes when people are driving in the desert they drive through a sand storm which erodes all the paint off their cars!

There are chemicals in the air. Some of these chemicals can corrode rocks, and fairly quickly, too. The names on marble gravestones can be dissolved away in only a couple of centuries. Carvings on buildings are being digested by chemicals that cause air pollution.

Another way that chemical action can break down rock is through crystallization. If salt water, for instance, gets into cracks in rocks, the salt crystallizes when the water evaporates. The tiny crystals push against the sides of the cracks and slowly widen them.

 $\textcircled{\circle}$  I can play guitar.

 $\bigcirc$  I can play the guitar.



We always use "the" before musical instruments.

### 1- Match the following words with their definitions.

- 1- Geology a- scenery as seen in a broad view
- 2- Landscape b- continue to live or exist
- 3- Sediment c- steep rock-face especially on a coast
- 4- Vapour d- wear away, destroy gradually
- 5- Evaporate e- made by or employing chemistry or chemicals
- 6- Survive f- narrow opening; break or split
- 7- Chemical g- turn from solid or liquid into vapour
- 8- Crack h- science of the earth's crust, origin of its rocks
- 9- Tide 1- grounds; dregs ; matter deposited on the land by water or wind
- 10-Tumble j- periodic rise and fall of the sea due to the attraction of the moon and sun
- 11-Cliff k- moisture or other substances diffused or suspended in air
- 12-Erode l- (to cause) to fall suddenly, clumsily or headlong

a.... b.... c.... d.... e.... f.... g.... h.... i.... j.... k.... l....

### 2- Answer the following questions.

1- How does erosion affect the geology of the planet? ..... 2- How does erosion affect the rocks in advance? ..... 3- What does the continuing movement of the waves show us? ..... 4- What other effects do the waves cause? ..... 5- Why are the names on marble gravestones dissolved away? ..... 6- How does the salt crystallize? ..... 7- What happens to the sand and stones that erosion carries? ..... 8- How much rainfall is needed for humans to live? ..... 9- What happens when it rains? ..... 10- What does the freezing water do to rocks and the walls of cracks? ..... 11- Are there any institutions in you country that fight against the erosion? What does it do? Can you give some information about its activities? ..... ..... ..... ..... .....





### MANDELA, NELSON (Rolihlahla) 1918-

South African politician and lawyer, president since 1994. He became president of the African National Congress (ANC) 1991. Imprisoned in 1964, as organizer of the then banned ANC, he became a symbol of unity for the worldwide anti-apartheid movement. In Feb 1990 he was released, the ban on the ANC having been lifted, and entered into negotiations with the government about a multiracial future for South Africa. In May 1994 he was sworn in as South Africa's first post-apartheid president after the ANC won 62.65% of the vote in universal-suffrage elections. He shared the Nobel Prize for Peace 1993 with South African president F W de Klerk.

Mandela was born near Umbata, South of Lesotho, the son of a local chief. In a trial of several ANC leaders, he was acquitted of treason in1961, but was once more arrested in1964 and given a life sentence on charges of sabotage and plotting to overthrow the government. In Feb 1990 he was released from prison on the orders of state president F W de Klerk and in July 1991 was elected, unopposed, to the presidency of the ANC. In Dec 1991 the ANC began constitutional negotiations with the government and in Feb 1993 Mandela and President de Klerk agreed to the formation of a government of national unity after free, non-racial elections (later scheduled for April 1994).

Mandela married the South African civil-rights activist Winnie Mandela 1955 (the couple separated 1992).

"Our deepest fear is not that we are inadequate. Our deepest fear is that we are powerful beyond measure. It is our light, not our darkness, that most frightens us. We ask ourselves, who am I to be brilliant, gorgeous, talented, and fabulous? Actually, who are you not to be? You are a child of God. Your playing small doesn't serve the world. There is nothing enlightened about shrinking so that other people won't feel insecure around you. We are born to make manifest the Glory of God that is within us. It's not just in some of us, it's in everyone, and as we let our light shine, we unconsciously give other people permission to do the same. As we are liberated from our own fear, our presence automatically liberates others.

Nelson Mandela" "President, South Africa"

#### Answer the following questions.

1-	How long did he stay in prison?
2-	Which negotiations did he enter?
3-	How was Mandela released from prison?
4-	What did Mandela struggle for?
5-	According to Mandela what does most frighten us?
6-	According to Mandela why are we born?
7-	According to Mandela how will our presence liberate others?
8-	What does post-apartheid president mean?



### **ELEPHANTS**

The elephant is the largest animal to walk on Earth. An elephant can carry a load of 550 kilograms. They eat 140 kilograms of food a day. An elephant baby can weight 90 kilograms at birth. Elephants can live up to 70 years.

Elephants can be trained to carry logs with their trunks, and have been used in the forestry industry in Asia for many years. Elephants also use their trunks for drinking water, bathing, and eating and communicating.

Recently it was discovered that elephants can communicate over a distance of several miles using infrasonic sounds inaudible to humans. Elephants use their ears as a cooling system. Blood flows through veins in the ears and as the elephant flaps his ears, the blood cools and flows through his body to cool off other parts.

Elephant feet are large and round. They distribute the large animal's weight effectively. In the past, elephants were killed and their feet were made into umbrella stands and small tables for tourists. Now elephants are protected by special laws.

There are two kinds of elephants: the African elephant and the Indian elephant. African elephants can be identified by the larger ears. The African elephant grows up to 10 feet tall and weighs as much as 5 tonnes.

The Indian elephant grows up to 3 metres tall, and weighs up to 3.5 tonnes. It's easier to identify because of its smaller ears. Most circus elephants are Indian elephants. Another name for the Indian elephant is the Asian elephant.

Unfortunately, there is a growing conflict between elephants and humans as more of the elephants' habitat is developed. Elephants can destroy the crops of an entire village in a single night, and this also causes conflict. At the moment, there are about 600,000 elephants remaining in Africa.

The greatest threat to elephants is the ivory trade. Most commercial ivory comes from elephant's tusks. From 1979 to 1989 was a bad time for African elephants. About 70,000 wild elephants were killed for ivory each year. In 1989 an international treaty limited the trade in ivory, decreasing the number of elephants killed, but elephants are still being killed for ivory. Please don't *ever* buy anything made from ivory! Don't even buy anything that *looks* like ivory!

### Answer the following questions.

1- How much does a baby elephant weigh at birth?
2- What do the elephants also use their trunks for?
3- What do the hunters make umbrella holders out of?
4- What part of an elephant's body is used to cool the elephant?
5- What animal is the most dangerous to an elephant?

 $\textcircled{\basis}$  The teacher insisted to give an exam.

The teacher insisted on giving an exam.



We always use "insist on doing something".

### PHONE KEEPS RINGING

My friend Fatih had a serious telephone problem. But unlike most people he did something about it.

The brand-new-Lake-Van hotel opened nearby and had acquired almost the same telephone number as Fatih.

From the moment the hotel opened, Fatih was besieged by calls not for him. Since he had the same phone number for years, he felt that he had a case to persuade the hotel management change its number.

Naturally, the management refused claiming that it could not change its stationery.

The phone company was not helpful, either. A number was a number and just because a customer was getting someone else's calls 24 hours a day didn't make it responsible. After his please fell on deaf ears, Fatih decided to take matters into his own hands.

At 7 o'clock in the early morning the phone rang. Someone from Safranbolu was calling the hotel and asked for a room for the following weekend. Faith said "No problem. How many nights?"

A few hours later Samsun checked in. A teacher wanted a suite with two bedrooms for a week for their honeymoon. Emboldened Fatih said the Presidential Suite on the 6<sup>th</sup> floor was available for 100\$ a night. The teacher said that he would take it and asked if the hotel wanted a deposit. "No, that won't be necessary", Fatih said. "We trust you."

The next day was a busy one for Fatih. In the morning, he booked a car manufacturer's convention for Memorial Day weekend, a college prom and a reunion of graduates of an Anatolian High school.

He turned on his answering machine during lunch time so that he could watch his favourite soup opera, but his biggest challenge came in the afternoon when a father called to book the ballroom for his son's birthday party the next week.

Fatih assured the man that it would be no problem and asked if he would be providing the flowers or did he want the hotel to take care of it. The father said that he would prefer the hotel to handle the floral arrangements. Then the question of valet parking came up. Once again Fatih was helpful. "There is no charge for valet parking but we always recommend that the client tips the drivers"

Within a few weeks, the Lake-Van Hotel was a disaster area. People kept showing up for birthdays, weddings and reunion parties and were all told there were no such events.

Faith had his final revenge when he read in the local paper that the hotel might go bankrupt. His phone rang and an executive from the Lake-Van hotel said, "We are prepared to offer you 100.000\$ for the hotel."

Faith replied "I'll take it, but only if you change the phone number."

O My friend can play the football very well.

OMy friend can play football very well.

We don't use "the" before sports.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A – Decide true (T) or False (F).

1- Most people did something about it.	Т 🗆	F 🗆
2- The hotel management was interested in the problem.	Т□	F 🗆
3- The phone company solved the problem	Т 🗆	F 🗆
4- Fatih answered all the telephones and checked in.	Т 🗆	F 🗆
5- Everything went wrong after Fatih's check in.	Т	F 🗆

#### **B-** Answer the following questions.

1-	Why were	the people	angry with	the hotel	management?
----	----------	------------	------------	-----------	-------------

2- How much was the presidential suit a night? Was it cheap or expensive?
3- Why did so many people want to check in?
4- Why did Fatih do so? Was he right or wrong?
5- Have you ever received wrong calls? What did you do?

#### C- Match the following words with their definitions.

1- Brand new	a- great or sudden misfortune; catastrophe
2- Besiege	b- completely new
3- Embolden	c- putting into order
4- Manufacturer	d-encourage
5- Convention	e-retaliation for an offence or injury
6- Challenge	f-person or firm responsible for manufacturing goods
7- Arrangement	g-harass with requests
8- Revenge	h- legally declared insolvent
9- Bankrupt	i- call to respond
10- Disaster	j-conference of people with a common interest

 $a.... \ b.... \ c.... \ d.... \ e.... \ f.... \ g.... \ h.... \ i.... \ j....$ 

 $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$  My parents are living in Samsun.

③ My parents live in Samsun.

-0-

We use "live" in simple present tense.

Dear Richard

We are happy to be here in Istanbul for our honeymoon. We are having a fantastic time. We are staying in the Old City at the Sultan Hotel. At the moment, we are eating fish and bread under the Galata Bridge in Eminönü and enjoying the spectacular view of the Maiden Tower, Topkapı Palace, and the Galata Tower.

The weather is very hot and perfect for sightseeing and a Bosphorus tour. The most famous sightseeing in Istanbul are the Blue Mosque, the Ayasofya, the Cistern and the Topkapı Palace. After visiting these wonderful sights you can go up to the Çamlıca hill to have 5 o'clock tea and enjoy the sunset.

Turkish people are really friendly, hospitable and kind to tourists. Most of them are good looking with big black eyes and moustache.

The food is delicious. We like eating kebabs, seafood and drinking rakı. The deserts are also delicious; baklava, sütlaç and Turkish delight. We love them.

Tomorrow, we are going to Antalya to swim and sunbathe. I am really looking forward to it. Antalya is the hottest and best place for the tourists.

We think that you should come here one day. We are sure that you would love to be here. We will show you all the pictures we took and you will decide yourself.

See you soon

Angela and George

### Write a letter to your friend about a city you have visited in your summer holiday

.....

Dear Sir or Madam

I'm writing to ask for more information about the Poem competition which I saw advertised in "**Varlık**". I would be very interested in participating but require further details.

First of all, could you let us know whether there is an age limit for participants? We would also be grateful if you could tell us when the deadline for application is, as well as the exact dates of competition so that I can send it to you.

Finally, could you please inform me whether there is restriction for topic?

I look forward to receiving your answer.

Yours faithfully.

Now you are going to write a formal letter for more information about summer course for teenagers (accommodation, sport activities, food, Money)




#### **LIFE-LONG FRIENDS**

We share life, our sorrow, and happiness with them. A good friend has a lot of qualities. The most three important of these are being loyal, helpful and trustful

In my opinion they must be loyal. A good friend never lets you down. She always stands by you, and she never disappoints you.

In addition a good friend is helpful. She always supports you when you have problem. She listens to you and advices you.

Furthermore, a good friend is trustful. She never gossips behind you. You are sure of her, so you can share whatever you want.

As a conclusion, a good friend is loyal and helpful. You feel confident when you are with her. Life is meaningless without a good friend.

Now you are going to write the qualities of a good teacher (Professional, trustful, have a good communication)

 • • • •		

27, Barbaros Street Zümrüt Apt Beşiktaş

The Personnel Officer Secure Guards Ltd İstiklal Street No: 56 İSTANBUL

Dear Sir,

I am applying for the post of Security Guard advertised in "The Daily News" yesterday and I am enclosing a copy of my CV as requested.

As you can see, I have worked for six years as the Mayor's personal bodyguard and before that I was in the army. My commanding officer and the Mayor can both supply you with references and their addresses can be found on my CV.

My experience in the army included working in Northern Cyprus and the Eğirdir Commando School. I have also accompanied the Mayor on his overseas trips. I notice that the advertised vacancy involves working overseas and I am very keen on travelling, which is why I have chosen to apply for this post.

I hope you will give my application serious consideration and I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

**Richard Strong** 

Write a letter of application to a company for the advertisement you have seen on a newspaper.



Dear Sir

We are writing to you with regard to your advertisement published in 'Travellers' Guide'. We would be grateful if you could give us some extra information about the rafting trip on the Çoruh river.

At first, we would like to know what type of accommodation your club offers and whether there is waterproof clothing and sleeping bags. What is more, we would like to know more facts about the time of the trip and how long it takes.

Secondly, we would appreciate it if you could send us your booklet with additional information regarding your firm. Moreover, we would be interested in the number of people in the group and we would also like to know whether there is a guide.

Finally, we would be grateful if you could give us all information as soon as possible because we are interested in this kind of sport. Furthermore, we would appreciate it if you could explain us what kind of facilities your firm offers.

Thank you in advance for your time and assistance. We look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Mr. and Mrs Güçlü

Write a letter for more information from a company for the advertisement you have seen on a newspaper.

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

### **Borrowing something**

**Caner**: Kemal, can I borrow your car at the weekend?

**Kemal**: Why do you want to borrow the car?

**Caner**: I'm going to the beach with my girlfriend

**Kemal**: Last time you borrowed it you had an accident and the tyres were badly torn. **Caner**: I promise I'll drive carefully this time.

**Kemal**: And the petrol tank was almost empty

**Caner**: I'll fill it up before I get home **Kemal**: Well, OK then, provided you're home by 8. I'm going out Sunday evening and I need the car.

**Caner**: Great. Thanks Kemal, I'll be home by 7:30.

### At the clothes shop

Salesman: May I help you? Customer: Yes, I'm looking for a nice dress for a wedding next week Salesman: Which colour would you prefer? Customer: Blue. **Salesman:** And what size are you? **Customer:** I'm not sure. Can you measure me? Salesman: You're 38" waist. How about this? **Customer:** What material is it? Salesman: Cotton. Customer: Have you got anything in Wool? Salesman: Yes, this dress is wool. **Customer:** Can I try it on? Salesman: Of course. The changing room's over there. **Customer:** It's a lovely dress. How much is it? **Salesman:** It's pure wool, so it's quite expensive. I am afraid it's €100. Customer: I'll buy it.

### **Borrowing something**

..... 

### At the clothes shop



### At the electrical shop

Salesman: Good morning, can I help you?
Customer: I hope so. I'm looking for a camera.
Salesman: The Canon is on special offer this week.
Customer: How much is it?
Salesman: Only £200
Customer: It's a little expensive. Do you have a cheaper one?
Salesman: Yes. This one is only £150.
Customer: What make is it?
Salesman: It's a Kodak.
Customer: I'll buy it. Do you accept credit cards?
Salesman: Yes we do.

### **Plans & Excuses**

Mary: Let's go to a movie together
Bill: I'd love to. When shall we go?
Mary: How about next Friday evening?
Bill: Let me see..... Oh, I am sorry. I'm having dinner with a friend
Mary: How about the following Tuesday?
Bill: That'd be great. What shall we see?
Mary: Star Wars?
Bill: No, that's boring. How about Austin Powers?
Mary: Sounds good to me. When shall we meet?
Bill: Seven? In the Kent Tavern?
Mary: Great, see you there.

**Bill:** Would you like to come to a movie with me?

Mary: When do you want to go? Bill: How about next Friday evening? Mary: I'm sorry, I can't. I'm having dinner with a friend.

Bill: How about the following Tuesday?Mary: I go to evening class on Tuesdays.Bill: Oh, maybe some other time?Mary: Yeah, I'll give you a call.

### At the electrical shop

### Plans & Excuses

..... ..... ..... 

### Hotel

Receptionist: Good evening. How can I help you? Tourist: Good evening. I'd like to book a room. Have you got any rooms? Receptionist: Yes, single, double or twin? **Tourist:** Single, please. **Receptionist:** Would you like a room with a shower or a bath? **Tourist:** With a bath please. **Receptionist:** That'll be £50 a night, including breakfast. When will you check in? Tourist: We will check in now and stay a couple of days. Receptionist: Room 502. **Tourist:** What time is breakfast? **Receptionist:** Breakfast is from 7 to 9. **Tourist:** And what time is dinner? **Receptionist:** Dinner's from 6:30 to 8:30. You'd better hurry. The restaurant closes in 15 minutes. Tourist: Thanks.

### **Booking a flight**

Passenger: I'd like to book a flight to Baku please. Secretary: Which airline would you like to use? **Passenger:** Which is the cheapest? Secretary: When do you want to travel? Passenger: Tomorrow. Secretary: Would you like a return ticket? **Passenger:** Yes, I'm coming back next week. Secretary: Let me see.. Onur air £150, but THY is the most expensive flight at £220, Passenger: How long does the Onur flight take? Secretary: Total time is 3.5 hours, THY takes 2.5 hours. **Passenger:** I may as well go with THY then. Secretary: How many seats would you like? Passenger: Two please and could we have vegetarian meals? **Secretary:** Sure, there's no extra charge.

### Hotel

  	•••		•••	•••	•••	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••	•	•••	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••	•••	•••	•	•••	•••	•
•••	•••	•••	•••	•	•••	•••	•	•••	•	•••		•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••	•		•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••		•••	•	•••	•••	•
	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•••	•••	•	•••	•	••	•••	•	••	•••	•	••	•	••	•••	••	•••	•	••	••	•
	•••	• •	•••	•	••	• •	•	• •	•	• •	••	• •	•	•••	•	•••	••	•	••	• •	•	••	•	•••	• •	••	• •	•	•••	•••	•
••		•	•••				-								-			-			-		-					-			•
•••						•••	•	• •		•				• •	•	•••	•••					•••	•	•••					••	•••	•
••							-								-								-								•
•••						•••	•	• •		•				• •	•	•••	•••					•••	•	•••					••	•••	
••							-								-						-		-								-
••																															•
•••							-								-						-		-								
••							-								-			-					-								•
•••							-								-						-		-							• • • •	-

### **Booking a flight**

..... ..... ..... 



### At the check-in desk

Officer: Good morning, may I have your ticket please? Passenger: Certainly. Can I take this as hand luggage? Officer: Yes, that'll be fine. Passenger: And can I have a window seat in the smoking section? Officer: I'm afraid this is a non-smoking flight sir. But you can have a window seat. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight. Passenger: Thank you.

### At passport control

Policeman: May I see your passport please?
Passenger: Here you are.
Policeman: What is the purpose of your visit?
Passenger: I'm here for a conference
Policeman: How long will you be staying?
Passenger: Three days.
Policeman: Thank you very much. Enjoy your stay

### At customs

Officer: Do you have anything to declare, sir? Passenger: Just some cigarettes and some whisky. Officer: How much whisky do you have? Passenger: Three bottles. Officer: That's fine, and how many cigarettes? Passenger: I have 200 packets. Officer: I'm afraid you're only allowed 100 cigarettes. You'll have to pay duty on the rest.

**Passenger:** Oh! How much is it? **Officer:** It is £10.00 plus V.A.T. a total of £11.80.

Passenger: Here you are.

### At the check-in desk

### At passport control

### At customs

•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•		•	•		•		•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•								•					•	•	•		•	•	•	•			•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•						•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	
																																•															•		
•		•				•	•		•		•	•						•		•				•			•			•						•			•	•		•	•						
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•



### After holiday

Ali: Where were you last week? Murat: I was in Budapest. Ali: Who were you with? Murat: I was with my girlfriend, Hülya. Ali: What was the name of the hotel? Murat: The Continental. Ali: Was it comfortable? Murat: Yes. it was. Ali: What was your room number? Murat: It was 520. Ali: Did you visit anywhere? Murat: Yes. We visited Esztergom and the Basilica. Ali: Was the Esztergom fortress impressive? Murat: Yes, it was. It reminded the old days there.

### At the bank

**Clerk:** Good morning, can I help you? **Customer:** Yes, I'd like to open a deposit account.

**Clerk:** Certainly Sir. Would you like a time deposit or a demand deposit account? **Customer:** What's the difference?

**Clerk:** You can open a demand deposit account with just 5million. The account comes with a cash card so you can withdraw your money at any time. The time deposit account currently pays 8% interest. For the time deposit d account you need a minimum of 50 million, and you have to give 14 days notice to withdraw money.

**Customer:** I'll go for the demand deposit account.

**Clerk:** How much would you like to deposit?

Customer: 10 million

Clerk: And we'll need two proofs of ID

**Customer:** I'm sorry. I don't have it on me. I'll come back in the afternoon.

### After holiday

..... ..... 

### At the bank

..... ..... ..... 

### Applying for a mortgage

Manager: Good morning, I'm the manager, how can I help you? Customer: We'd like to apply for a mortgage.

**Manager:** Have you found a property you're interested in?

**Customer:** Yes we have.

**Manager:** How much would you like to borrow?

**Customer:** Well, the property is 50 billion. **Manager:** So you need a 50 billion loan. Do you have an account with this bank? **Customer:** Yes, we both have accounts here. I've had my account for over ten years.

Manager: How much do you both earn? Customer: I earn 3 billion and my wife earns 2.5 billion

**Manager:** That's fine. Now would you like to complete this form?

### **Crime / Burglary**

Officer: Central Police Station. Can I help vou? Woman: I hope so. My house has been burgled. **Officer:** Where do you live? Woman: On Cumhuriyet Street. Officer: When did you realise the burglary? Woman: When I got home from work at 5 o'clock. **Officer:** Was anything stolen? Woman: Yes. All my jewellery's gone, and some money too. Officer: How did they get in? Woman: They forced the back door. Officer: Has anybody seen them? Woman: Yes I have. Officer: Can you identify them? Woman: One of them was medium. He had short brown hair, and he was in his 30's. I couldn't see the other one clearly. Officer: An officer will be round in about 10 minutes. Please don't touch anything.

### Applying for a mortgage

..... ..... .....

### Crime / Burglary

..... 



### At the estate agent

**Agent:** Hi, what can I do for you? **Customer:** I'm interested in the flat in Kadıköy. What can you tell me about it? **Agent:** It's on the third floor of a beautiful, four-storey house. It has two bedrooms and a large living room overlooking the sea. The kitchen and bathroom have recently been re-decorated.

**Customer:** Is it centrally heated? **Agent:** Yes, it's centrally heated throughout, and double-glazed too.

**Customer:** Does it have a parking space? **Agent:** No, but there's plenty of unrestricted parking in Kadıköy and nearby.

Customer: How much is it?

**Agent:** It is 90 billion TL, but I believe the owner would be willing to accept an offer. **Customer:** How long is the lease?

**Agent:** There's no lease. The price includes a share of the freehold.

### **Planning holiday**

Barbara: Where shall we go for our holiday this year, Ted?
Ted: How about Majorca? It's cheap, and good weather is guaranteed.
Barbara: I'd rather do something more exciting this year. Have you seen this ad for adventure holidays in Scotland?
Ted: I prefer lying on a beach to hang-gliding and canoeing.
Barbara: But we do that every year. I'd prefer to do something different this time.
Ted: I'd rather not go anywhere so crowded.
Barbara: Well, you have a point. Majorca was very crowded last time. I'd prefer

somewhere a little quieter too, but I don't fancy anything too active.

**Ted:** How about Torquay? The weather's usually good and there are some lovely walks around the coast.

**Barbara:** Sounds OK to me. Would you prefer to stay in a hotel or rent a cottage?

### At the estate agent

..... 

### **Planning holiday**

..... 



### **Rules**

Director: Welcome to Karas&Karas Co. Do you have any questions?
Employee: Yes, what time do I have to start work?
Director: You have to start work at 8.30.
Employee: What do I have to do?
Director: You have to type letters, make tea and answer the telephone.
Employee: Do I have to wear a uniform?
Director: No, but you must wear a tie.
Employee: Do I have to work overtime?
Director: Yes, you have to work overtime every other Saturday.

### **Telephone**

Operator: Good afternoon, Foster's. May I help you? **Caller:** Extension 237 please Operator: I'm sorry, the line is busy. Will you hold? Caller: Yes, I'll hold. ..... **Operator:** I'm putting you through. Henry Well: Marketing. Henry Well speaking. Caller: Could I speak to Maria Craine please? **Henry Well** : I'm sorry. She's in a meeting at the moment. **Caller:** Do you know when she'll be back? Henry Well : She should be back around four. Can I take a message? Caller: Yes, please ask her to call Daniel Jones on 6563478, Henry Well: 6563478, right? Caller: That's right. Henry Well : OK, I'll see he gets your message.

### **Rules**

### Telephone

..... ..... 

### Selling

Salesman: Good morning, I'm doing a survey on family life. Could you spare a few moments to answer some questions? Housewife: Well, I'm rather busy.... Salesman: It'll only take a minute or two. Are you married? Housewife: Yes, I am. Salesman: And do you have any children? Housewife: Yes, two. Salesman: Have you ever thought about what would happen to your family if you die, or you're taken ill? Housewife: No, I haven't. Salesman: Let me tell you about our family protection plan. Housewife: I really must be..... Salesman: For only £50 a month this policy covers all medical fees and provides your family with an income equal to your salary in the event of your death. Housewife: I already have insurance, thank you. Salesman: Ah but when did you last increase your premiums? The cost of living is rising all the time and no other policy is as generous as ours. Housewife: I really can't afford any more insurance. Salesman: But can you afford not to? Just think about your wife and children if anything happens to you. Housewife: As I said..... Salesman: As a special offer, for this week only, we can offer you free cover for three months. Just sign here and your policy will start today. You can cancel any time in the next three months and it won't cost you a penny. Housewife: I can cancel any time? Salesman: Yes. Just return the cancellation form. There's nothing to lose. Housewife: Oh, very well then

### Selling

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
••••••
••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

### **Eating out**

Waiter: Good evening.Customer: A table for two please.Waiter: Certainly, just here, sir.Customer: Could we sit by the window?Waiter: I'm sorry. The window tables are all reserved

Waiter: Are you ready to order, sir? Customer: Yes. I'll have tomato soup for starters and my wife would like prawn cocktail. Waiter: One tomato soup and one prawn

cocktail. What would you like for main course?

**Customer:** I'll have the plaice and my wife would like the shepherd's pie.

**Waiter:** I'm afraid the plaice is off. **Customer:** Oh dear. What do you recommend?

Waiter: The steak pie is very good.

**Customer:** OK I'll have that.

**Waiter:** Would you like anything to drink? **Customer:** Yes, a bottle of wine please.

### Complaining

**Technician:** Hi, can I help you? **Customer:** Hope so. I bought this television here about three months ago, but the sound and picture quality is awful. The picture is always flickering and there's a dark line down the left-hand side of the screen. And there's an annoying hissing sound in the background.

**Technician:** Do you have an outside aerial?

Customer: Yes, I do.

**Technician:** Have you tried adjusting it? **Customer:** Several times.

**Technician:** Hmmmm. I'll get our engineers to have a look at it.

**Customer:** A friend of mine bought the same model here and had exactly the same problems. I want a refund.

**Technician:** I'm afraid it isn't our policy to give refunds, sir.

Customer: I want to see the manager.

### **Eating out**

..... 

### Complaining

### A bad holiday

Secretary: Good morning, can I help you? **Customer:** I'd like to make a complaint about my holiday in Portugal last week Secretary: I'm sorry to hear that. What exactly was the problem?

**Customer:** First of all the coach taking us to the hotel broke down and we had to wait for over two hours in the sweltering heat before a replacement arrived. Then when we got to the hotel we found our room hadn't been cleaned.

Secretary: Oh dear, did you complain to the hotel staff?

Customer: Of course, but we were told all the chambermaids were off duty. Anyway, that's not all. The people in the room above sounded like they were having all-night parties, every night. I demanded another room but the receptionist told me the hotel was full.

Secretary: Oh, I see.

Customer: And to cap it all the food in the hotel restaurant was awful. It was so bad we had to eat out all the time despite having paid for meals in the price of our holiday.

Secretary: I do apologise. I'd like to offer you a 20% discount on the price of one of our autumn breaks as a gesture of goodwill.

**Customer:** A 20% discount, you must be joking. I want to see the manager.

#### Bank

Clerk: Good morning, can I help you? Customer: Yes, I'd like to open a deposit account.

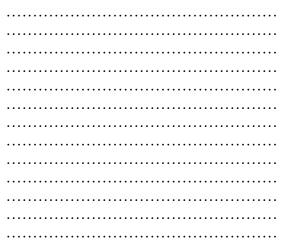
Clerk: Certainly Sir. Would you like a Silver or a Gold account?

**Customer:** What's the difference? Clerk: The Silver card's interest rate is %8. The Gold card's interest rate is 6.5%. **Customer:** I'll go for the Silver account. Clerk: And we'll need two proofs of ID, driving licence, credit card statement etc. Customer: I'm sorry. I don't have any of those on me. I'll come back tomorrow.

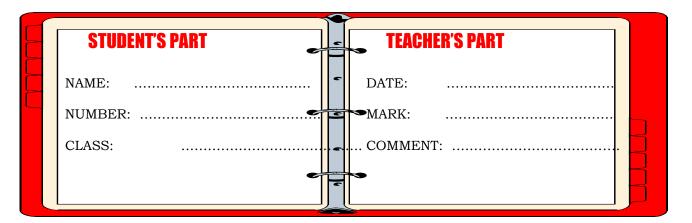
### A bad holiday

..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... 

#### Bank







#### **1-** Write the subject pronouns "he, she, **5-** Complete the table. (5 points) we, they". (5 points)

a) My father	•
b) Ali and Cem	•
c) My mother and I	•
d) Şule	•
e) My teacher	

#### 2- Use "a" or "an. (6 points)

L

a) univer	sity b)	orange
c) pen	d)	pencil
e) umbre	lla e)	egg

#### **3-** Complete the table. (6 points)

Country	Nationality
a) Turkey	
b) Greece	
c)	German
d)	_ English
e) The U.S.A.	
f) Italy	

#### 4- Use "this", "that", "these" or "those". (4 points.)

a)	is an apple.
b)	is a school over there.
c)	are cats in that garden.
d)	are flowers in my hand.

Cardinal	Ordinal
a) One	
b) Two	
c)	the tenth
d) Eighteen	
e)	the fiftieth

#### **6-** Write the plurals. (5 points)

a) man	
b) woman	
c) country	
d) baby	
e) watch	

#### 7- Write questions for answers. (8 points)

a)	?
My name is Yılmaz.	
b)	?
I'm 35 years old.	
c)	?
I'm from Hakkari	
d)	?
I'm an actor.	

# 8- Put the following verbs into correct order and make questions. (10 points.)

a) You / how / are / old / ? /

b) Where / your / is / friend / from / ? /

c) Is / it / o'clock / nine / ? /

d) They / where / from / are / ? /

e) It / is / today / Sunday / ? /

#### 9- Write the following times. (12 points)

a) 11:00 _	·
b) 10:30	
c) 08:45 _	
d) 09:15	•
e) 15:20	······································
f) 18:40 _	·

# **10-** Make the following sentences singular. (5 points)

- a) They are actors.
- b) They are children.
- c) My teeth are white.
- d) There are two knives on the table.
- e) They are our teachers.

# **11-** Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) What is the second month of the year?
- b) What is the first day of the week?
- c) Where is your town?
- d) What are the winter months?
- e) What day is it today?

# 12- Read the text and answer the questions. (8 points)

My name is John. I am from England. I am forty-five years old. I am quite tall.

- a) What is his name?
- b) How old is he?
- c) Where is he from?
- d) Is he tall?

## **13-** Complete the table about yourself and write a paragraph (8 points)

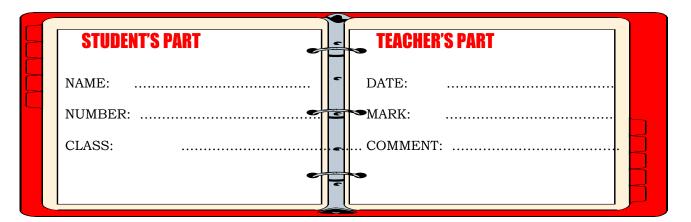
Name:	 
From:	 ·
Age:	
Height:	
U	

# 14- Complete the following dialogue.(8 points)

- Sally : Hello. I'm Sally. \_\_\_\_\_name?
- Ben : \_\_\_\_\_ Ben.
- Sally : \_\_\_\_\_, Ben? Ben : \_\_\_\_\_ England. \_\_\_\_ you?
- Sally : \_\_\_\_\_ Canada.
- Ben : \_\_\_\_\_\_ to meet you.
- Sally :\_\_\_\_\_.







# **1- Marisa and Aylin are talking about the seminar. Complete the dialogue using "some" or "any". (10 points)**

L

1

- Marisa: Are there \_\_\_\_\_ bookshops in the city?
- Aylin: Yes there are \_\_\_\_\_ in the city. But there aren't \_\_\_\_\_ in the town.
- Marisa: How awful! What about the hotels? Are there \_\_\_\_\_ good hotels?
- Aylin: Yes, there are <u>good hotels</u> in the city and in the town.
- Marisa: And. What about the teachers?
- Aylin: I'm sure there are a lot of good teachers there.

# 2- Complete the sentences with "are, is aren't, isn't". (5 points)

- a) There \_\_\_\_\_ four rooms in the house.
- b) There \_\_\_\_\_ any students in the room.
- c) There \_\_\_\_\_ a computer in the office.
- d) There \_\_\_\_\_ a university in my city.
- e) There \_\_\_\_\_ 250 pages in this book.

# 3- Complete the paragraph with subject pronouns or possessive adjectives.(6 points.)

My name is Jane. I have got one brother. \_\_\_\_\_\_ name's Terry. \_\_\_\_\_\_ is quite tall and \_\_\_\_\_\_ has got long dark hair. \_\_\_\_\_ sister's name is Julie. \_\_\_\_\_\_ is fifteen and \_\_\_\_\_\_ has got long blonde hair.

# 4- Complete with the correct preposition "in, on, at". (4 points)

- a) \_\_\_\_\_ five o'clock.
- b) \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
- c) \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
- d) \_\_\_\_\_ June.

# **5-** Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) How many pens have you got on your desk?
- b) Has your teacher got a black bag?
- c) Has your friend got a dictionary with him/her?
- d) Has your mother got blonde hair?
- e)Who has got a computer in his/her room?

#### 6- Circle the odd word out. (5 points)

- a) Sunday January Monday Friday.
- b) Winter Summer Autumn October.
- c) First Third Ten Second.
- d) Ten Thirty Twentieth Twenty.
- $e) \ North-South-Southeast-West.$

# 7- Ask questions for the following answers. (10 points)

a)	?
They are playing in the school yard.	_
b)	_?
My parents are visiting their friends.	
c)	_?
She is <i>completing the exercises</i> .	
d)	_?
Because the blackboard is dirty.	
e)	_?
We are waiting for the bus	

We are waiting for *the bus*.

## 8- Find the mistakes and rewrite the sentences. (5 points)

- a) There are a lot of book in my bag.
- b) Are there some people in the bank?
- c) Who is play the piano?
- d) There are some childrens in the park.
- e) I am going to Ankara on June.

# **9-** Read the questions in List A and match them with the answers in List B. (10 points)

#### LIST A

- a) Can you sing well?
- b) What's your friend writing?
- c) Are there any televisions in the room?
- d) Where can people buy books?
- e) What is the next month?

#### LIST B

- 1) a poem.
- 2) Yes, there is one.
- 3) At the bookshop.
- 4) May.
- 5) No, I can't

a	b	С	d	e

#### 10- Complete the following sentences with suitable verbs in the box in the correct tense. (10 points)

have	speak	watch	wash	look
a) She		a we	stern filr	n now.
b) We	can		lunch at	school.
c)	yo	u	Englis	h well?
d) My	neighbou	rs	_	their
car a	t the mor	ment.		
e) A m	an			at you.
				-

# 11- Underline the correct word.(5 points)

- a) My sister *like / likes* dogs.
- b) She *don't / doesn't* drink coke.
- c) I and my son *swim / swims* well.
- d) They study / studies science at school.
- e) Does she *watch / watches* TV everyday.

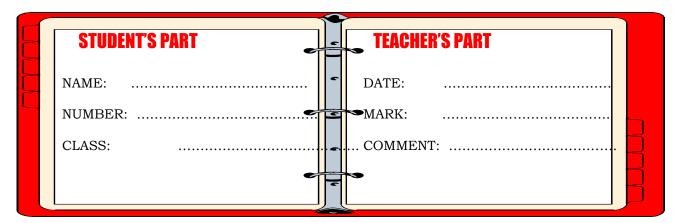
# **12-** Put the words into the correct order. (10 points)

a) My / has / son / brown / got / eyes /.

- b) I / not / have / long / got / hair /.
- c) You / have / curly / got / hair / ? /
- d) They / got / have / sons / two /.
- e) You / a / have / sister / got / ? /

# **13-** Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) Where can you buy cassettes?
- b) Who can make good cake?
- c) What can you learn at school?
- d) How can you travel to Ankara?
- e) When can you swim?



# 1- Complete the following sentences in present continuous or present simple.(10 points)

- a) I always \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to school.
- b) He \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) her mother's bag now.
- c) They \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) all the food at the weekends.
- d) My friend \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) American literature.
- e) He \_\_\_\_\_ (like) eating ice-cream.

#### 2- Complete the following sentences with "what, where, what time, who, when, how often, how long, which". (8 points)

- a) \_\_\_\_\_ is your father's job?
- b) \_\_\_\_\_ are they listening to?
- c) \_\_\_\_\_ are you leaving for England?
- d) \_\_\_\_\_ does your mother get up?
- e) \_\_\_\_\_ do you take reports?
- f) \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to the theatre?
- g) \_\_\_\_\_ can you stay underwater?
- h) \_\_\_\_\_ is your pen? The red one?

# **3-** Write the past forms of the following verbs. (6 points)

a) cry

L

1

1

- b) cut
- c) have
- d) climb
- e) take
- f) get

# 4- Make simple past tense questions and match them with the answers.(15 points)

#### LIST A

- a) What time/ you / yesterday / get up / ? /
- b) Who / the police / last night / catch / ? /

c) Invent / who / the / telephone / ? /

d) Where / she / yesterday / buy / book / ? /

?

e) Where / you / born / were / ? /

#### LIST B

- 1) In Germany.
- 2) The thieves.
- 3) Sir Alexander Graham Bell.
- 4) At 7 o'clock.
- 5) From a bookshop.

a	b	С	d	e

#### 5- Circle the odd word out. (6 points)

- a) Go Come Help Buy.
- b) Study Watch Take Clean.
- c) Am Is Are Was.
- d) Yesterday Last week Everyday Last year.
- e) Book Pen Pencil Desk.
- f) Teacher Worker Mother Driver.

#### 6- Ask the questions. (10 points)

a)	?
I was at home.	
b)	?
With my friends.	
c)	?
No, Burcu wasn't with us.	
d)	?
They were at the concert.	
e)	?
Charries with has sister	

She was with her sister.

# 7) Find out the mistakes and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) We catched fish at the weekend.
- b) They didn't telephoned me yesterday.
- c) She have got a beautiful house.
- d) The childs didn't go to the party.
- e) The school started on September.

# 8- Put the following words into right category. (15 points)

Adverb	Nouns
	Adverb

often	mice	carry	write	always
go	never	country	help	hotel
usually	rarely	teacher	cake	want

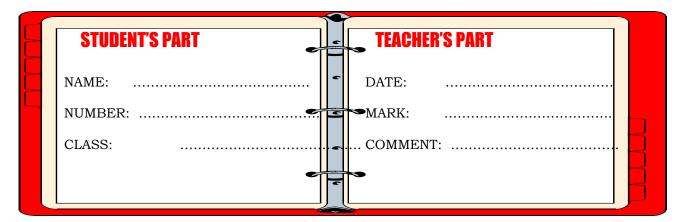
# **9-** Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) What are you doing at the weekend?
- b) Do you often do examples in English?
- c) Have you got any foreign pen-friends?
- d) When do the trees fall their leaves?
- e) Who was the school director last year?
- f) Who advised you to choose this school?
- g) How was the weather like last weekend?
- h) When do you usually get up?
- i) Does your teacher ask easy questions?
- j) Do you go to school by bus?

# 10- Complete the following sentences with the past simple of the verbs.(10 points)

run wash cook dance have X 2 stay visit paint escape

- a) I \_\_\_\_\_ my hair this morning.
- b) They \_\_\_\_\_ at home yesterday.
- c) She \_\_\_\_\_ an accident last month.
- d) We\_\_\_\_\_\_a great time at the party.
- e) Ali \_\_\_\_\_\_ ten miles at the weekend.
- f) The cook very delicious meals.g) The students very delicious meals.
- h) Ayşegül \_\_\_\_\_\_ this picture.
- i) My father \_\_\_\_\_ his friend at the hospital.
- j) Two men \_\_\_\_\_ from this prison.



# 1- Complete the conversation with the sentences (a-e) below . (10 points)

- A: Good morning. Can I help you?
- B: \_

Т

1

- A: Yes of course. Medium or large?
- B: \_\_\_
- A: What colour do you want?
- B: \_\_\_\_

A: No, I'm sorry. We have blue one.

- B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: Yes here you are.
- B:\_\_\_\_\_

de ¦

- a) Dark blue, please.
- b) Blue is ok!
- c) Yes. Can I have a pair of tracksuit, please?
- d) Thank you very much.
- e) Medium, please.

#### 2- Complete the following sentences with "my, your, his, her, its, our, their". (10 points)

- a) My boss is in \_\_\_\_\_office.
- b) The birds are in \_\_\_\_\_ cage.
- c) I and my friend are in \_\_\_\_\_ new house.
- d) It is raining. She hasn't got \_\_\_\_\_ umbrella.
- e) Did you paint \_\_\_\_\_ room?

# **3-** Match the sentences with the suitable choice. (10 points)

#### LIST A

- a) You can watch film.
- b) You can write with.
- c) You can look for new words.
- d) You can have lunch.
- e) You can buy music CD's.

#### LIST B

- 1) a pen.
- 2) at the restaurant.
- 3) in a dictionary.
- 4) at the cinema.
- 5) at the music shop.

а	b	С	d	e

#### 4- Find the odd word out. (10 points)

- a) Car Bus Truck Plane
- b) Butter Bread Cheese Potato
- c) This That Those Their
- d) Blue Red Pink Think
- e) Spring Winter Autumn August

# 5- Complete the sentences with "have and has got". (10 points)

- a) Jane \_\_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful room.
- b) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
- c) They \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of new friends.
- d) My grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ two houses.
- e) Mike \_\_\_\_\_\_ an earache.

# 6- Put "don't" where necessary. (10 points)

a) It's wet. \_\_\_\_\_\_ sit down.
b) It's very noisy. \_\_\_\_\_\_ be quiet.
c) You are late. \_\_\_\_\_\_ leave home at once.
d) It's very cold. \_\_\_\_\_\_ open the window.
e) \_\_\_\_\_\_ turn the music up. It's very slow.
f) \_\_\_\_\_\_ cross. The light is red.
g) \_\_\_\_\_\_ cheat in the exam.
h) \_\_\_\_\_\_ go to school in time.
i) \_\_\_\_\_\_ feed the animals in the zoo.
j) Please, \_\_\_\_\_\_ help me.

# 7- Complete the following sentences in simple past tense. (10 points)

- a) Where \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go) yesterday?
- b) I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a trip around Turkey.
- c) What \_\_\_\_\_ (you / do)?
  d) How many cities \_\_\_\_\_ (you / visit)
- e) I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) my relatives.

#### 8- Complete the paragraph with the past tense of "be" positive or negative (10 points)

It \_\_\_\_\_\_ a sunny day. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ in a green garden and there \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of people there. There \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of children, too, but there \_\_\_\_\_\_ any cars. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ there because people said it \_\_\_\_\_\_ a good place for children to play. Suddenly, there \_\_\_\_\_\_ a loud bang and my son \_\_\_\_\_\_ there. I \_\_\_\_\_ very worried but in the end I found my son next to the crashed car.

# 9- Complete the sentences with "how many, a few, any, how much, some". (10 points)

- a) \_\_\_\_\_ windows are there in your room?
- b) \_\_\_\_\_ tea do you drink a day?
- c) I don't drink \_\_\_\_\_ tea.
- d) I drink <u>water</u> water.e) They have only <u>books</u>.
- f) \_\_\_\_\_ cheese does she eat?
- g) \_\_\_\_\_ birds are there in the cage?
- h) There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ rice on the plate.
- i) I buy \_\_\_\_\_ magazines every week.
- j) There were only \_\_\_\_\_ balloons.

#### **10-** Put the words in the correct order. First write the questions and then answer them. (10 points)

a) What / going to / she / at / weekend / the / do / ? /

b) Help / she / you / going to / ? /

c) You / going to / TV / watch / ? /

d) Going to / help / who / you / ? /

e) When / going to / have / you / lunch / ? / ?

?

\_\_\_\_\_?

STUDENT'S PART	•	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	e	DATE:
NUMBER:	S	MARK:
CLASS:		COMMENT:
e	~	

#### 1- Complete the following sentences using "gerund" or "infinitive" in simple present or simple past. (20 points)

a) My son \_\_\_\_\_

L

1

(like / play) football, but he \_\_\_\_\_

(not like / play) volleyball.

b) The taxis \_\_\_\_\_

(stop / run) at midnight.

c) Please, \_\_\_\_\_

(stop / laugh).

d) The workers \_\_\_\_\_

(want / go on) strike last year.

e) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ (like / listen),

to music but I \_\_\_\_\_

(hate / watch) TV.

f) My father \_\_\_\_\_

(not / mind / watch) football matches.

g) Hakan \_\_\_\_\_

(good at / play) football.

h) In Summer, we often \_\_\_\_\_ (go / swim)

# **2-** Rewrite the following sentences using object pronouns. (10 points)

- a) I lent my dictionary to my friend.
- b) She helps *her mother* at the weekend.

c) The actors liked *the film*.

- d) The secretary posted *the letters* to *the company*.
- e) They invited *my parents* to *the party*.
- f) Children tell *their problems* to *their parents*.

# **3-** Complete the following sentences with "in, on, at, between, opposite, next to". (10 points)

- a) I met my friend \_\_\_\_\_\_ the concert.
- b) Ordu is \_\_\_\_\_ Samsun and Giresun.
- c) Their house is \_\_\_\_\_ Yalova.
- d) Whose picture is \_\_\_\_\_ the wall?
- e) Rumeli Castle is \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Anatolian Castle.
- f) Who is the girl \_\_\_\_\_ the horse?
- g) We like going on picnic \_\_\_\_\_ Spring.
- h) They are waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop.
- i) Afyon is \_\_\_\_\_ to Isparta.
- j) Who is \_\_\_\_\_ you and your sister in the picture?

# 4- Put the following verbs into categories. (10 points)

take	travel	type	write	operate
see	say	climb	use	cut

Irregular

Regular \_\_\_\_\_\_

# 5- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) When did Atatürk found the Turkish Republic?
- b) When did Atatürk open the Turkish Grand National Assembly?
- c) When was your father born?
- d) What were Atatürk's parents' names?
- e) What are your parents' names?

# 6- Write a paragraph about what you are going to do at the weekend.(10 points)

#### 7- Complete the following letter with the simple present, simple past, present continuous or future tense. (15 points)

Dear Ömer, I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_(write) to you from England. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_(be) here for a seminar with Ünal and İsmail. We \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_(have) a great time here. We \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_(go) sightseeing everyday. Yesterday, we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_(go) shopping, but Ünal couldn't come with us because he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_(not / feel) well. We \_\_\_\_\_\_\_(buy) some interesting presents for you. The shops in the town \_\_\_\_\_\_\_(be) great.

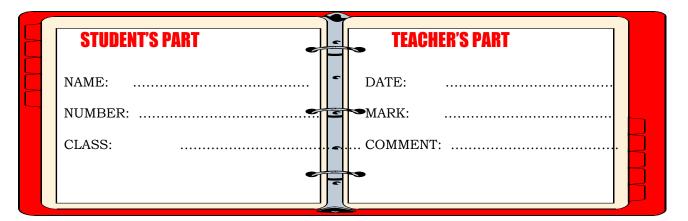
Tomorrow, we
(have) drama classes and I hope Ünal
(be) fine and
(join) the course.

Anyway, at the moment, we \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on the balcony and \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) the view. We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for Turkey next week. See you soon. Your friend.

#### 8- This is a short biography of my friend Metin. Write a paragraph about Metin. (15 points)

Born:	1965
Born:	Yozgat
Studied:	19 May University.
Went:	The U.S.A. for master
	Degree in 1988.
Now:	Teaches at university.





# **1-** Match the sentences in List A with the sentences in List B. (10 points)

#### LIST A

L

L

- a) What was the name of the girl
- b) Can you remember
- c) There were two cars
- d) Can you tell me the way
- e) Was there an accident

#### LIST B

- 1) the name of the shop?
- 2) in front of the house.
- 3) on the road?
- 4) to the state building?
- 5) you were walking with?

a	b	С	d	e

# 2- Find the mistakes and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) We were watched TV at five o'clock.
- b) Why did you went to the supermarket?
- c) Were Joseph cleaning the windows?
- d) When was the last time you visit a museum?
- e) Where did you going this morning?

#### **3-** Complete the following sentences in the past continuous or simple past tense. (10 points)

- a) As I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home,
- I (meet) her.
- b) While we \_\_\_\_\_ (work), they \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed.
- c) When it \_\_\_\_\_\_ (start) raining, the boy \_\_\_\_\_\_ (enter) a shop.
- d) Just as they \_\_\_\_\_ (cross) the
- street, they \_\_\_\_\_ (notice) the bus.
- e) As they \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV, the power \_\_\_\_\_ (go) off.

#### 4- Complete the following story with correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the simple past or past continuous tense. (10 points)

Yesterday, two young people <u>walked</u> (walk) into a bank in Istanbul. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ (wear) jeans and leather coats and they \_\_\_\_\_\_ (carry) bags. While the bank officers \_\_\_\_\_ (work), the men \_\_\_\_\_\_ (point) guns to them. One of the men \_\_\_\_\_ (hit) the security guard on the head. The man at the desk \_\_\_\_\_\_ (open) the cash drawer and \_\_\_\_\_\_ (give) the robbers 70 billion TL. The robbers \_\_\_\_\_\_ (leave) quickly. While they \_\_\_\_\_\_ (run) towards the car, the security guard regained consciousness. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ (shoot) them. They were both killed.

#### 5- Answer the following questions according to the passage in "question 4". (10 points)

- a) What were the robbers wearing?
- b) What did one of them do?
- c) Who opened the cash drawer and gave them the money?
- d) What happened while they were running towards their car?
- e) What happened to them in the end?

# 6- Give true answers to the following questions. (10 points)

- a) What is your favourite football team?
- b) What colour do you like most?
- c) Who is your favourite pop-singer?
- d) What is your favourite food?
- e) What is your favourite drink?

# 7- Complete the following sentences with "may, can, can't". (10 points)

a) \_\_\_\_\_ I go out?
b) \_\_\_\_\_ you clean the board, please?
c) I \_\_\_\_\_ speak German, but I want to.

- d) Where \_\_\_\_\_ you catch a plane?
- e) Perhaps, they \_\_\_\_\_\_ send you a letter.

#### 8- Circle the odd word out. (10 points)

a) Sailing – Cleaning – Boxing - Running.

- b) Big Small Happy Often.
- c) Town Village City School.
- d) English Science Geography Story.
- e) River Mount Lake Sea.

#### **9-** Put the words in the right order. Make questions and answer them. (points 20)

a) Can / excuse / you / me / help / ? /

b) What / envelope / mean / in / English / does / ? /

.....?

\_\_\_\_\_?

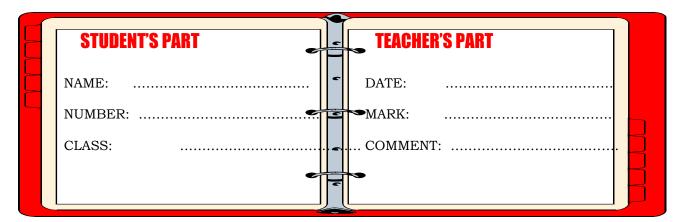
c) What / date / today / the / is / ? / \_\_\_\_\_?

d) Get up / this / what / you / time / did / morning / ? /

\_\_\_\_\_?

e) Who / with / sitting / you / are / ? /

\_\_\_\_\_?



# **1-** Choose the correct alternative. (10 Points)

1) The film was *disappointing / disappointed*.

L

2) The match was quite *excited / exciting*.

3) I wasn't *excited / exciting* at the match.

4) Children were *boring / bored* in the park5) The questions were not *surprising / surprised*.

# 2- Put the following adjectives into correct order. (10 points)

a) a-an / nice / wooden / square / table /.

b) a-an / green / new / wool / pullover /.

c) a-an / big / plastic / black / bag /.

d) a-an / interesting / long / holiday /.

e) a-an / ring / golden / unusual /.

# **3-** Complete the sentences with following adverbs. (10 points)

well	fast	hard	dangerously	happily

- a) I am tired, because I worked\_\_\_\_\_.
- b) The children walk very \_\_\_\_\_.
- c) She can speak English \_\_\_\_\_.
- d) My friend drives car \_\_\_\_\_.

L

e) They live in the small house \_\_\_\_\_.

# **4-** Complete the sentences with correct superlative. (10 points)

- a) Dolphins \_\_\_\_\_\_ (friendly) animals
- b) Fatih Terim \_\_\_\_\_\_ (good) coach in Turkey.
- c) Istanbul University \_\_\_\_\_\_ (old) university.
- e) Morning \_\_\_\_\_\_ (busy) time of the day.

# 5- Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives. (10 points)

- a) A motorcycle \_\_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) than a scooter.
- c) A horse can run \_\_\_\_\_ (fast) than a donkey.
- e) Ali's marks \_\_\_\_\_\_(good) than my marks.

# 6- Answer the following questions (10 points)

- a) Which subject do you like best?
- b) Who has got more pens than you?
- c) Who gets up the earliest in your family?
- d) Which city is the most crowded? Istanbul, Hakkari or Adana?
- e) Who is the tallest student in your class?

## 7- Use "so" or "such" in the blanks. (10 points)

- a) I was \_\_\_\_\_\_ tired that I couldn't run.
- b) It was \_\_\_\_\_ an exciting game!
- c) She was \_\_\_\_\_ old that she couldn't walk.
- d) They walked \_\_\_\_\_ fast that the boy couldn't catch them.
- e) It was \_\_\_\_\_\_ a dirty pool that nobody wanted to swim.

## 8- Make sentences using "as –as" or "not as – as" (10 points)

- a) BMW / Opel / fast /
- b) Mount Erciyes / Mount Ağrı / high /.
- c) Gold / silver / expensive /.
- d) Boxing / karate / dangerous /.
- e) Cigarette / alcohol / harmful /.

# **9-** Make sentences "the more-the more". (10 points)

a) Less / work / less / earn /.

b) Much / take exercise / healthy / be /

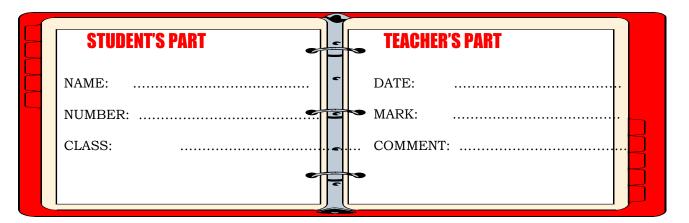
c) Late / go to bed / late / get up /.

d) Much / practice / much / be perfect /.

e) Fast / drive / much / be in danger /.

# **10-** Write the opposite of following adjectives. (10 points)

a) Quick	·
b) Happy	
c) Beautiful	·
d) Lucky	·
e) Dangerous	
f) Small	
g) Hardworking	
h) Cold	·
i) Exciting	
i) Thick	



#### 1- Complete the following sentences with "since" or "for". (10 points)

a) I have stayed in that city \_\_\_\_\_\_ a long time.

L

- b) They have been mending the car \_\_\_\_\_ the accident.
- c) She has been cleaning the house \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
- d) The footballers have practised \_\_\_\_\_\_ two hours.
- e) I haven't been to doctor \_\_\_\_\_\_ 1997.

## **2-** Use the suitable possessive pronoun and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) The man is cleaning *his car*.
- b) The blue ones are *my books*.

c) Which one is *your school*?

d) Where can they park *their car*?

e) You have got *her book* in your bag.

#### 3- Complete the sentences with "must, mustn't, have to / has to / don't have to". (10 points)

- a) He \_\_\_\_\_ brush his teeth everyday.
- b) You \_\_\_\_\_\_ feed the animals. Look at the sign!
- c) The park is free. I \_\_\_\_\_ pay money.
- d) She \_\_\_\_\_ give her milk everyday.
- e) You \_\_\_\_\_\_ talk loudly in the library.

#### 4- Put "a/an" or "the" where necessary. (10 points)

- a) They went to \_\_\_\_\_ Alps to ski.
- b) \_\_\_\_\_ River Nile is \_\_\_\_\_ longest river.
- c) In \_\_\_\_\_ future, people will leave on \_\_\_\_\_ moon.
- d) There is \_\_\_\_\_ garden.
- e) We have \_\_\_\_\_ cinema in the town.
- f) My son eats \_\_\_\_\_ egg every morning.
- g) The fourth month of \_\_\_\_\_ year is April.

# 5- Complete the sentences with "been / gone" (10 points)

- a) Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ to China?
- b) My cousin isn't at home. She has \_\_\_\_\_\_ shopping.
- c) They have \_\_\_\_\_ to Cyprus. They will come back soon.
- d) I've never \_\_\_\_\_ to an opera.
- e) Hello! Where have you \_\_\_\_\_?

## 6- Complete the sentences with question tags. (10 points)

- a) We have been here since the morning,
- b) They can't solve the problem,
- c) You like playing tennis,
- d) The drivers must be careful,
- e) The film finished very late,
- f) Your mother is waiting for you,

- ?

- g) He was catching fish,
- h) They didn't invite you to their party,  $\frac{2}{2}$
- i) My girlfriend has got a sports car, \_\_\_\_?

# 7- Complete the following sentences using "just, already, yet". (10 points)

- a) No, thank you. I have \_\_\_\_\_\_ drunk tea.
- b) We haven't finished the book \_\_\_\_\_
- c) Has your father returned from work ?
- d) We have \_\_\_\_\_ bought some bread. It is very fresh.
- e) Ali: Are you coming to the shops, Can? Can: No, I've \_\_\_\_\_ been there.

## 8- Complete the sentences with "need, needn't, needn't have". (10 points)

- a) I bought some fruit. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ buy more.
- b) It's raining. You \_\_\_\_\_ to take your umbrella.
- c) They \_\_\_\_\_ help me. I finished my work.
- d) We \_\_\_\_\_ bought cake, but I bought.
- e) You \_\_\_\_\_ hurry. We have a lot of time

## **9-** Answer the following questions. (8 points)

- a) How long have your parents been married?
- b) What is the most exciting match you've ever watched?
- c) Who is the nicest person you've ever met?
- d) How long have you known your classmate?

## **10-** Match the jobs in List A with the words in List B. (12 points)

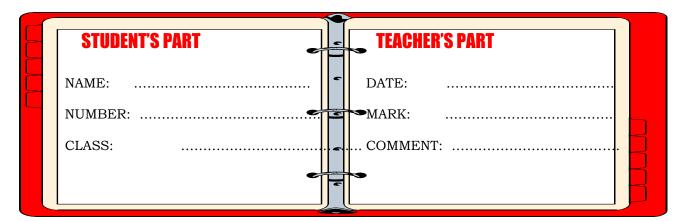
- LIST A
- a) Teacher
- b) Driver
- c) Nurse
- d) Engineer
- e) Secretary
- f) Worker

LIST B

- 1) Bus
- 2) Buildings
- 3) School
- 4) Office
- 5) Hospital
- 6) Factory

а	b	с	d	e	f





#### 1- Rewrite the following sentences using "neither – nor". (10 points)

a) The driver didn't drive carefully. He didn't drive slowly, either.

L

- b) The film wasn't exciting. It wasn't funny, either
- c) Students won't go on holiday. Teacher won't go on holiday, either.
- d) The car wasn't cheap. It wasn't new, either.

e) I can't dance. I can't sing, either.

# 2- Rewrite the sentences with "both / and". (10 points)

- a) I visited my uncle. I visited my aunt, too
- b) She was tall. She was beautiful, too.
- c) I bought a pen. I bought a pencil, too.
- d) The pilot checked the buttons. He checked the engines, too.

# **3-** Complete the following sentences. (10 points)

- a) I didn't get up early, because
- b) She was out of money, so
- c) The water was very dirty, so
- d) The match didn't start, because
- e) We were late because of

# **4-** Complete the following sentences with indefinite pronouns. (10 points)

- a) Was there\_\_\_\_\_ famous there?
- b) I haven't bought \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- c) You can buy \_\_\_\_\_ you want.
- d) I left my friend \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- e) \_\_\_\_\_ was very expensive here.

# 5- Complete the sentences with "too" or "enough". (10 points)

- a) The film is \_\_\_\_\_ boring. I don't want to watch it.
- b) They have got \_\_\_\_\_ money to buy that dress.
- c) The questions are \_\_\_\_\_ difficult to answer.
- d) The dog is fast \_\_\_\_\_ to catch the cat
- e) The water is \_\_\_\_\_ cold to swim.

# 6- Complete the sentences with suitable reflexive pronouns. (10 points)

- a) I think I can't finish this work
- b) Most young people go on holiday
- c) She is too young. She can't go there
- d) Suddenly, the door was closed

e) We will solve these problems

.

# 7- Complete the sentences with suitable type of "if clauses". (10 points)

- a) If you want to learn a language, you
- b) Tell him to call me, if you
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her.
- c) If they finish the work, they \_\_\_\_\_\_ (start) another one.
- d) If I had more time, I\_\_\_\_\_ (complete) the exercises.
- e) If their car hadn't broken down, they \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in time.

# 8-Use "either", "or" and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

a) They can stay in our house or in a hotel.

b) She reads magazines or newspapers.

\_\_\_\_\_

- c) I can ride a bike or a horse.
- d) I like drinking coke or tea.

e) The film will start at 10 or 11.

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 9- Combine the following sentences using "who, which, whose, where, when". (10 points)

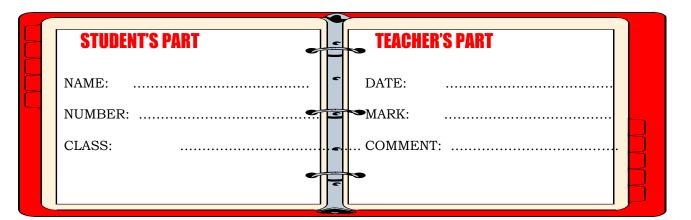
- a) The girl is a top model. She is standing on the stage.
- b) A lighter is a device. It is used for lighting cigarettes.
- c) The old lady is our neighbour. Her husband died last year.
- d) A cafe is a place. We can drink tea.
- e) 2000 was the year. 21<sup>st</sup> century started then.

\_\_\_\_\_

# **10-** Complete the sentences in future perfect tense. (10 points)

.

- a) By tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_
- b) By June, \_\_\_\_\_
- c) Before the match, \_\_\_\_\_
- d) Until the morning, \_\_\_\_\_
- e) By the end of this month, \_\_\_\_\_



- **1- Report the following sentences.** (30 points)
- a) Teacher: "Don't make noise."

L

- b) Cenk says: "I can play tennis well."
- c) Mr Yılmaz said. "They are waiting in the park."
- d) The minister said: "Schools will be opened next month."
- e) Ömer to me: "Did you finish the questions?"
- f) Bora to Burcu: "Are you coming to the cinema tomorrow?"
- g) The interviewer to the girl: "How long have you stayed abroad?"
- h) "Could you give me a hand?" The old woman to the boy.

- i) Father to son: "Your uncle is going to meet you at the airport."
- j) The film director is saying: "Please, be a little more active."

# **2- Rewrite the following sentences in causative. (20 points)**

a) My friend painted our office yesterday. We \_\_\_\_\_

.

- b) I asked the man to mend the iron.
- c) My computer is out of order. I'll take it to the mechanic. (mechanic)
   I \_\_\_\_\_\_
- d) Her purse was lost. She will ask the police to find it. (the police)She \_\_\_\_\_\_
- e) The windows are dirty. I will ask the cleaners to clean them. (the cleaners) I

- a) They paint the house every year.
- b) America sent the warships to the gulf.
- c) We are tidying the room.
- d) Were you watering the flowers?
- e) Have the police caught anybody?
- f) They hadn't visited the Atatürk Museum before.

?

?

- g) The government will take new measurements.
- h) Are the students going to give a party?
  i) Can your father mend this bike?
  j) Who must control the tickets?

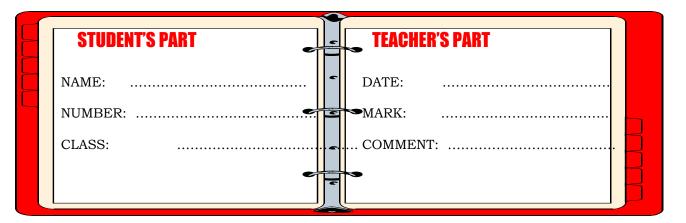
# 4- Complete the following sentences in past perfect or simple past tense.(20 points)

- a) Before they left the room, \_\_\_\_\_
- b) The footballers had a bath after \_\_\_\_\_
- c) I had just cleaned my table when \_\_\_\_\_
- d) By the time the bell rang, \_\_\_\_\_
- e) After she had waited two days, \_\_\_\_\_

# **5-** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct order. (10 points)

- a) If I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) you,
  - I wouldn't go there.
- b) If they had been more careful, they
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) an accident.
- c) If my son \_\_\_\_\_ (save) some money, he will buy a scooter.
- d) Before they arrived, we \_\_\_\_\_ (tidy) all the rooms.
- e) After it had got dark, the children
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out.
- f) While you \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep), I prepared the breakfast.
- g) We \_\_\_\_\_ (not practise) the song since last week.
- h) \_\_\_\_\_ the footballers \_\_\_\_\_\_ (play) match everyday?
- i) I had my hair \_\_\_\_\_ (dye) last week.
- j) \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for

their country tomorrow?



# 1- Write the correct forms of the adjectives and adverbs. (10 points)

L

a) She is (beautiful)
girl I've ever met.
b) This is not as(expensive)
the other one.
c) Bananas are(not cheap)
oranges.
d) I think Turkish food
(good) Italian.
e) Mardin is (far)
distance I've ever travelled.

# 2- Complete the following table. (10 points)

adjective	comparative	Superlative
		the best
	more handsome	
little		
	easier	
		the most expensive

# **3-** Complete the following sentences. (10 points)

a) Yesterday was one of the

..... day of my life. b) This classroom is..... the other classroom.

c) This is	TV
programme I've ever watched.	
d) The film was	. than I
expected.	
e) Istanbul is	
(crowded) city in Turkey.	

# **4-** Rewrite the following sentences. (20 points)

- a) I haven't read as much as you. You've read.....
- b) Our team isn't as good as your team. Your team .....
- c) Nobody in the family is taller than Murat.
  - Murat.....
- d) No student in this class is noisier than Ercan. Ercan is the .....
- e) Bora is the youngest in the family. Everyone in the family .....

# 5- Underline the correct word. (10 points)

a) This mosque is *the oldest / eldest* in Turkey.

b) Actually, he is *more bad / worse* than he was yesterday.

c) The exam wasn't *as hard as / as hard* I expected.

d) Jane plays tennis *gooder / better* than Monica.

e) This game is *least interesting / less interesting* than tennis.

### 6- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

a) Who is the funniest student in your class?

b) Whose pronunciation is better than yours?

.....

c) Which is more suitable for your family? A house or a flat?

.....

d) Where do you like living most? In a village or in a city?

.....

e) Which season do you like most? summer or winter?

.....

# 7- Rewrite the following sentences. (20 points)

a) The water isn't hot enough. (cold) It is too cold

b) You are too late to enter the concert hall. ( early )

.....

- c) I don't find golf interesting. (keen on)
- d) I can't buy that car. It is very expensive. (rich)

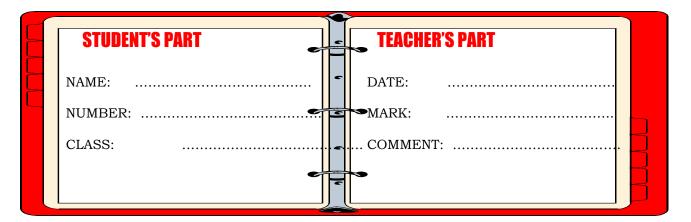
e) I can't go to bed now. It's too early. (late)

.....

## 8- Find three things or people in your class. (10 points)

a)
b) Graduated from the same primary
school
·····
c) Love dancing most
d) Are the tallest
e) Most hardworking





#### 1- Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets (be going to or future will) (10 points)

1

L

L

L

L

a) We (have)a baby next
week.
b) I'm tired. So I (go)to
bed early.
c) Bye for now. Perhaps I (see)
you tomorrow morning.
d) Next weekend I (stay)
with my friends.
e) I'm sure you (like)
your new school.

# 2- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. (simple past or past continuous.)(20 points)

a) While we (run)my
wife (fall over)
b) They (eat)kebab
everyday in Adana.
c) When I (enter)the
classroom they (fight)
d) While they (listen)to
the news, they(hear)
the bad news.
e) As the people(sunbathe)
on the beach. It
(start)to rain.

#### **3- Read the answers and write** question for each answer. (20 points )

a)?
Yes, that's right. I lost my wallet
yesterday.
b)?
No, they weren't. They were
decorating their new house.
c)?
Not Italy. We went toCyprus on
holiday.
d)?
Very hot? Yes, it was.
e)?
Because I was ill.

#### 4- Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets (Present Simple or Present Continuous) (10 points)

a) Where (you, go)? This
is the wrong way.
b) Please be quiet! We (watch)
a romantic film.
c) Jane (always, get up)at
7 in the morning.
d) I (watch)a lot of TV
every night.
e) I'd like to buy that suit. How much
(it, cost)?

#### 5- Choose the best answer. (10 points)

1- When he spoke to him, he .....the book yet.
a- hadn't finished b- had finished
c- will finish d- finished

2- They .....to have a look all the shop window, before they .....their decision.
a- want/making b- want/made
c- want/make d-wanted/made

3- They missed the beginning of the film. It ......before they

a- starts/arrived b- started/arrived c- had started/arrived d- starting/arrived

u starting/arrived

4- He couldn't find his wallet because his sister ......a- had hidden b- was hidden c- is hiding d- will hide

5- When I was a child I .....hours playing football in the garden.a- used spend b- use to spendc- have spend d- used to spend

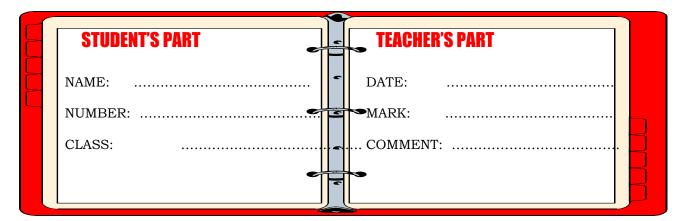
#### 6- Choose the best answer. (10 points)

a) I have had/had several exams since last week.
b) The ministers have been discussing/discussed the problem for two weeks.
c) He has already finished/been finished his homework.
d) When she arrived home, the film had already started/ has started.
e) It was still raining when we stopped / have stopped for dinner.

# **7-Ask questions for underlined words. (20 points)**

a) She made a silly mistake and everybody laughed. What..... ..... What..... ..... b) You must drive <u>carefully</u>, <u>because</u> the road is icy. How..... Why..... c) They are practising English with the tourists. What..... ..... Who..... d) We stayed in a five star hotel for two weeks. Where..... How long..... e) She reads two newspapers every morning. What..... When..... .....





# **1-** Match the following sentences. (10 points)

- 1- If a burglar broke into my house.
- 2- If I miss the school bus.
- 3- If she took more exercise.
- 4- If I were you.

L

- 5- If he trained harder.
- 6- If the music weren't too loud.

a- she would feel better.

- b- he would win more races.
- c- I would scream.
- d- I will take a taxi.
- e- They wouldn't call the police.
- f- I wouldn't help him.

1	2	3	4	5	6
с					

# 2- Complete each sentence using "if or unless" (10 points)

a) Come on. <u>Unless</u> you hurry, you will miss the train.

b) .....you feel like going out, phone me tonight.

c) ..... I run everyday I don't feel healthy.

d) We will have a garden party .....it is too cold.

e) Ayla will go out .....she finishes the housework.

f) There will be a lot of pollution ...... people use bikes instead of cars.

# **3- Underline the correct word in each sentence.** (10 points)

a) It they *telephoned / <u>had telephoned</u>* me, I *will give / <u>would have given</u>* the news.

b) If he *drove / had driven* more carefully, he *wouldn't have crashed / didn't crash*.

c) If we *run / ran*, we *can / will be* catch the bus.

d) If we *have / had* a helicopter, we *could / could be* go there earlier.
e) If you *lend / would lend* me your motorbike, I *will let /let* you borrow my rollerblades.

f) If she *had worn / wore* a raincoat, she *wouldn't have got wet / wouldn't got wet*.

# **4-** Complete the following sentences. (10 points)

#### a) If I were famous

b) If all the icebergs melted

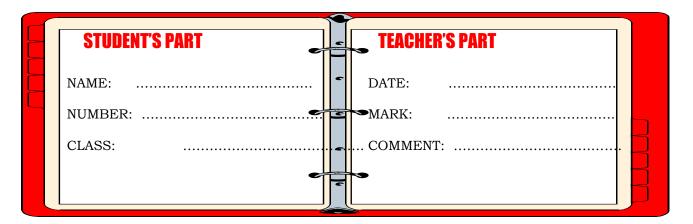
c) If they hadn't gone out

d) If she had brought some more money with her

182

e) If you arrive early 5- Answer the following questions. (20 points) a) What changes would you do if you were the headmaster in your school? ..... b) What would you do if you were invisible? c) Which country would you choose to live if you had a chance? d) How would you feel if the school lasted 3 months and holidays 9 months. e) What would you do if you knew your friend would die in a month. 6- Make questions and answer them. (20 points)a) what/do/lose your money? -What would you do if you lost your money? -I would telephone my parents. b) who/invite/give a birthday party ..... c) where/visit/be in London. ..... d) how much/spend/want to buy new clothes. 

e) what changes/make/be the Minister of Education 7- Find the objects. (10 points ) a) If you read it a lot. You are intellectual. b) If you don't have it you can't travel abroad c) If you don't do it, your teacher will get angry with you d) If you don't have it, you can't drive car e) If you eat it a lot, you will get fat. 8- Give advice to your friends. Use "if I were you" (10 points ) a) I have got a lot of homework b) I want to go to the party at night. c) I don't have a girl friend. I can't talk to the girls. ..... d) I can't hear the teacher at the back seat ..... e) My parents treat me like a child. f) I think I spend too much on CD's. 



#### 1- Underline the correct word in each sentence active or passive. (10 points)

L

a) Yesterday three cars were stolen/are stolen in Taksim

b) We have been decided/have decided to go on a picnic on Sunday.

c) The bus broke down/was broken down yesterday.

d) Titanic was seen/saw by many people in the world.

e) Web sites designed/are designed by the computer programmers.

f) Most of the exams organized/are organised by OSYM in Turkey?

### **2-** Correct the following sentences as in the example. (10 points)

a) Toyota cars are made in Bursa(Sakarya)No,. They're made in Sakarya.b) Coffee is picked in Nigeria. (Columbia)

c) Helmets are used by drivers. (Cyclists)

d) Oranges are produced in Malatya. (Antalya) e) Shoes are made of wool. (Leather)

f) Most electronic equipments are manufactured in India. (Japan)

# **3-** Change the following questions into passive and then answer them in passive as in the example (20 points)

a) When did the secretary type the letters? When were the letters typed? They were typed in the morning. b) Where have you bought this jacket? ..... c) Who arrested the workers after the demonstration? ..... d) Where were they building a new Olympic swimming pool? ..... ..... e) When will the mechanic repair the televisions? f) Why must they delay the flight to Rome?

.....

### **4-** Put in a passive verb in the correct tense. (10 points)

### **5-** Change the following into the passive. (10 points)

- a) Are we going to paint it or not? Is it going to be painted or not?
- b) Who should we invite to the party?
  - .....
- c) An obsessed fan shot John Lennon in front of his house.

d) The government should. take some precautions about the accidents.

e) Nobody can measure happiness.

f) They don't grow tobacco in Samsun any more.

.....

6- Change the following sentences into the active. (10 points)

a) The USA president was met by the Prime Minister at the airport. The Prime Minister met the USA president at the airport.

b) This medicine can not be bought without a prescription.

.....

c) All the preparations for the wedding are being made by the organisers.

.....

d) The bride's wedding dress was designed by a famous designer. e) I am going to be given a lift by my friend.
f) My father has been checked by the

f) My father has been checked by the doctor for two hours.

.....

#### 7- Choose the best answer (10 pts)

a) All the drugs should be..... out of reach of children.

- a) kept b) made c) keep d) store
- b) The city was ..... by a volcano.a) paintedb) cleanedc) builtd) destroyed
- c) My car .....at the moment.
  a) is being fixed
  b) was fixed
  c) was being fixed
  d) fixed

d) Vegetables and fruits must...... before eating.

- a) wash b) be washed
- c)be washing d) washed
- e) The school can not .....
- before 5 o'clock.
  - a) leave b) be leave
  - c) be left d) be leaved
- f) The house was..... when I
- left in the morning.
  - a) being cleaned b) cleaning
  - c) being clean d) being cleaning

## 8- Answer the following questions. (20 points)

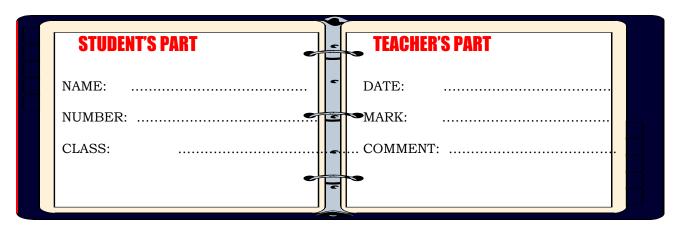
a) When was the Turkish Republic founded?

b) When was your father born?

c) What currency is used in your country?

d) What kind of TV programmes are watched most?

e) Who was İnce Memed written by?



#### 1- Underline the correct word. (10 pts )

a) A young boy *who/which* was carrying a bunch of flower, knocked at the door.b) The school *which/whose* was in the city

centre is being painted.c) The man *who/whose* house I am staying is an old friend.

d) The students who/which were late were waiting at the door.

e) The couple who/whose house I bought moved to another city.

# **2- Underline the relative pronoun that can be left out. (10 pts )**

a) The house that we are staying at is my uncle's

b) The people who were leaving were singing happily.

c) The garden which was very large, was full of flowers.

d) The doctor who I go is on holiday now.e) The car which she bought last month, broke down.

## **3-** Rewrite the sentences without a relative clause. (10 pts)

a) That's the motel which they stayed one night.

.....

b) Ihlara valley was the most interesting place that I saw.

.....

c) The museum which we visited was extremely beautiful.

.....

d) The books which Mary read couldn't explain the problem.

.....

e) The girl who I met at the party was very beautiful.

.....

#### 4- Combine the following sentences using the suitable relative clause.(20pts)

a) A man met me at the bus station. He carried my bags.

.....

b) A boy found a woman's passport. She gave him a reward.

c) The man was very angry. His car was damaged.

.....

d) The girl is my friend. She lives next door.

.....

e) The policeman stopped me. He asked my driving licence.

.....

#### **5-** Circle the correct answer. (10 pts )

a) I'm writing to Zeynep, .....I met in Aksaray last month. a-who b-whom c-whose d-which b) The factory .....I worked has closed down. a- that b- where c-whose d- who c) My brother lost his watch .....he bought last month. a- b- whose c- who d- where d) The minister .....son was arrested yesterday has resigned. a-where b-whose c-which d- \_\_\_ e) Our furniture ......we've had for ten years still looks fine. a-\_\_\_\_ b- who c- whose d- when 6- Complete the following sentences using adjective clauses. (10 pts) a) I met a lot of new teachers this summer. The teachers are young and talented. The teachers ..... ..... b) We go to the sport hall. The sport hall is in Sakarya. The sport hall..... ..... c) The Maths book is difficult. We used the maths book last term. The Maths book.....

- d) Sometimes we go camping. The camping is always exciting and relaxing. The camping......
- e) I watch documentaries on TV. The documentaries inform me a lot. The documentaries.....

# 7- Complete the following sentences. (20 points)

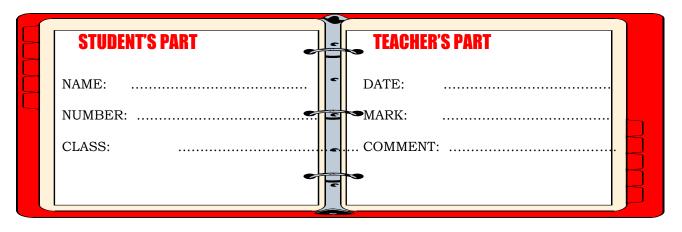
a) A restaurant is a place
b) My house is the place
c) İstanbul is the city
d) Ünal is the man
e) Winter is the time

### 8- Write sentences with the given words. (10 pts)

a) Apartment / that / lived
b) village / that / grew up
c) country / that / love
d) Kayseri / where / live
e) Bodrum / where / spend holidays







# 1- Underline the mistakes in the following sentences and rewrite them. (10 points)

L

a) Ali said me that he would leave early.

b) "What's the matter" George told.c) Tom said he is coming to my

birthday party.

d) Serdar told his friends that he has just bought a new bike.

.....

e) He told he would be back soon.

.....

.....

# 2- Rewrite the following sentences in direct speech. (10 points)

a) Erol said that he was going shopping.

.....

b) The manager said he would let me know the result.

.....

c) Buğra said that he had finished his homework.

d) Nur said that she had written a letter to her uncle the previous day.

.....

e) My uncle said they would see us the following day.

·····

# **3-** Rewrite the following sentences in direct speech. (10 points )

a) James asked Lisa if she was going with him or staying there.

b) Burak asked if I often used the internet.

c) The tourist asked me how many languages I could speak.

d) I asked my friend what time she had

got up in the morning.

.....

e) The teacher asked me who I wanted to sit next to in class.

.....

### 4- Complete the following sentences in reported speech. (20 points)

a) "I will certainly bring your car back at seven" I said my friend. I promised..... ..... b) "If I were you I wouldn't eat that much" Leyla said Mehmet. Leyla advised..... c) "How about going for a picnic" said Ahmet. Ahmet suggested ..... d) Well done," you've passed the final exam" Tim said Mary. Tim congratulated ..... e) No, "I won't come with you" said Gürkan. Gürkan refused ..... .....

#### 5- Change the following reported speech sentences into imperatives. (20 points)

a) His teacher warned him not to be late.

b) I told him to respect other people.

c) Her mother advises her to come home on time.

d) The doctor reminded the patient to bring the prescription next time.

e) My wife asked me to visit her parents more often.

# 6- Complete the following sentences. ( 20 points )

a) Our teacher told us
b) I asked my best friend
c) The librarian told the students
d) The Prime Minister asked the people
e) The director warned the footballers

# 7- Write the following sentences in reported speech. (10 points)

a) "I have some good news to tell you" Ünal said İsmail.

.....

- b) "My father has just gotten a new job" Halim said.
  - .....
- c) "We want to leave because we are exhausted" I said.

.....

d) "The school is going to start next week" the principal said.

.....

e) "I can help you with your homework "My friend said to me"

.....

### VOCABULARY 1 WORD RELATIONS

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following nouns and make compound nouns as in the example.

a) hair	1) clock	1) <u>Hair dryer</u>
b) alarm	2) brush	2)
c) air	3) dryer	3)
d) city	4) centre	4)
e) pencil	5) case	5)
f) sauce	6) gallery	6)
g) book	7) park	7)
h) tooth	8) stop	8)
i) picture	9) port	9)
j) ice	10) agent	10)
k) foot	11) ball	11)
1) art	12) frame	12)
m) bus	13) pan	13)
n) news	14) case	14)
o) car	15) berg	15)

#### B- Complete the following sentences using suitable compound nouns from Exercise A.

1) He sets the	before going bed.
2) They met their friends at the	
3) The post office is in the	You can find easily.
4) The man parked his car at a	
5) Titanic hit an	and sank.
6) They always buy newspaper at the	·
7) There a lot of pens in her	
8) Batuhan bought a	_ for his friend's birthday.
9) His favourite sport is	·
10) The exhibition is at the	Did you visit it?
11) The plane landed at 4:00. I met them at the	he
12) I always use	after the bath.
13) There are a lot of books in the	
14) The woman bought a	for her daughter.
15) The woman is cooking soup in a	·



### **VOCABULARY 2** WORD RELATIONS

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following nouns and make compound nouns as in the example.

a) tea	1) hole	1) <u>Tea Pot.</u>
b) pop	2) ball	2)
c) tooth	3) guard	3)
d) post	4) pot	4)
e) travel	5) studio	5)
f) girl	6) paper	6)
g) security	7) jockey	7)
h) rain	8) agency	8)
i) disc	9) star	9)
j) news	10) coat	10)
k) water	11) box	11)
1) basket	12) office	12)
m) film	13) friend	13)
n) post	14) paste	14)
o) key	15) fall	15)

#### B- Complete the following sentences using suitable words from Exercise A.

1) I boiled some water in the	·
2) They bought a tube of	at the supermarket.

3) Shakira is a famous \_\_\_\_\_

- 4) Ömer has got a lot of foreign \_\_\_\_\_. One of them is Ania.
- 5) The boy was looking through the \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Cem Ceminay is a talented \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) There were a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_ in front of the bank.
- 8) I received some holiday brochures from a
- 9) Niagara is the most famous \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the world.
- 10) The most advanced \_\_\_\_\_\_ are in the Hollywood.
- 11) Hidayet Türkoğlu is a superb \_\_\_\_\_ player. He plays in NBA.
- 12) There were a lot of letters in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13) I read my horoscope in today's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14) The man was wearing a \_\_\_\_\_. But it was sunny.
- 15) I went to the \_\_\_\_\_\_ to pay the telephone bill.



### VOCABULARY 3 WORD RELATIONS

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following verbs and nouns as in the example.

a) have	1) a message	1) Receive an e-mail
<i>'</i>	<i>,</i> U	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
b) make	2) an e-mail	2)
c) send	3) a cake	3)
d) receive	4) a picture	4)
e) ride	5) a plane	5)
f) write	6) a song	6)
g) give	7) a diary	7)
h) draw	8) a car	8)
i) catch	9) a game	9)
j) ask	10) a shower	10)
k) play	11) a question	11)
l) fly	12) a cold	12)
m) sing	13) a party	13)
n) keep	14) a letter	14)
o) rent	15) a bicycle	15)

#### B- Complete the following sentences using suitable words from Exercise A.

1) I receive a lot of	every day.
2) My wife	every week. It is very delicious.
3) My friend	through the mobile phone.
4) Hüseyin wants to	He has got a mountain bike.
5) My wife	to his brother every month. He is in the army now.
6) Every year Sema	on her birthday.
7) Banu	in her notebook everyday.
8) People	every winter. They take drugs to recover.
9) Students always	They want to learn everything.
10) Children	in the garden in the afternoon. They like it.
11) A pilot	
12) Kağan always	in the room. He is very cheerful.
13) My students	in English. They write it every evening.
14) Some people	at the airport. They like driving.
15) People	_ everyday in summer. Because it's very hot in summer.



### VOCABULARY 4 WORD RELATIONS

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following verbs and nouns as in the example.

a) receive	1) a mistake	1) <u>Receive a message</u>
b) send	2) a bus	2)
c) ride	3) an example	3)
d) make	4) a headache	4)
e) give	5) a hat	5)
f) catch	6) a hamburger	6)
g) fly	7) a boat	7)
h) have	8) a holiday	8)
i) wear	9) a cigarette	9)
j) climb	10) a story	10)
k) eat	11) a mountain	11)
1) tell	12) a helicopter	12)
m) sail	13) a horse	13)
n) plan	14) an E-Mail	14)
o) light	15) a message	15)
		1

#### B- Complete the following sentences using suitable words from Exercise A.

1) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ everyday from my friend.

2) Kaan is at the internet cafe now. He is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to his girl friend.

3) Ceyda is in the farm. She is \_\_\_\_\_\_ now.

4) The students are \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the new structure.

5) The man is running to the bus stop. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ everyday at the same time.

6) Burcu is a careless student. She always \_\_\_\_\_.

- 7) I'll taken an aspirin. I \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) The pilot can \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) The man is sitting on the bank and \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 10) The young boys are \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the island.
- 11) The climbers are \_\_\_\_\_ in Switzerland.
- 12) Our teacher is \_\_\_\_\_\_ now. It is red.
- 13) The girls are \_\_\_\_\_\_ for summer.
- 14) Your friend is \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the school cafeteria.
- 15) Grandmother is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the children.



### VOCABULARY 5 OPPOSITE VERBS

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following verbs with their opposites as in the example.

a) lose1) subtractb) export2) tightenc) start3) finishd) close4) misse) loosen5) hatef) refuse6) setg) punish7) accepth) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lendo) add15) remember		
c) start3) finishd) close4) misse) loosen5) hatef) refuse6) setg) punish7) accepth) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	a) lose	1) subtract
d) close4) misse) loosen5) hatef) refuse6) setg) punish7) accepth) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	b) export	2) tighten
e) loosen5) hatef) refuse6) setg) punish7) accepth) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	c) start	3) finish
f) refuse6) setg) punish7) accepth) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	d) close	4) miss
g) punish7) accepth) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	e) loosen	5) hate
h) rise8) wini) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	f) refuse	6) set
i) forget9) rewardj) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	g) punish	7) accept
j) buy10) openk) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	h) rise	8) win
k) cry11) importl) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	i) forget	9) reward
l) borrow12) sellm) love13) laughn) catch14) lend	j) buy	10) open
m) love 13) laugh n) catch 14) lend	k) cry	11) import
n) catch 14) lend	l) borrow	12) sell
, , ,	m) love	13) laugh
o) add 15) remember	n) catch	14) lend
	o) add	15) remember

1)	start	Χ	finish
2)		Х	
3)		Х	
4)		Х	
5)		Х	
6)		Х	
7)		Х	
8)		Х	
9)		Х	
10)		Х	
11)		Х	
12)		Х	
13)		Х	
14)		Х	
15)		Х	

#### B- Complete the following sentences with one of the verbs from Exercise A.

1) Can I \_\_\_\_\_\_ your pen, please?.

2) If you arrive early, you can \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bus.

3) While the little girl was \_\_\_\_\_\_ bitterly, her brother was \_\_\_\_\_\_.

4) The boy \_\_\_\_\_\_ to do his homework and his teacher got angry with him.

5) I don't feel relaxed. I will my belt.

6) The sun \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the east and \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the west.

7) The girl wants to \_\_\_\_\_\_ a new pair of shoes.

- 8) If you \_\_\_\_\_\_ 10 and 10, you get 20.
- 9) If you can't \_\_\_\_\_ the match, don't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 10) The manager didn't \_\_\_\_\_ my proposal. He \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 11) His father \_\_\_\_\_\_ the boy for breaking the window.
- 12) If you need, I can \_\_\_\_\_\_ you my camera.
- 13) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ to close the doors of my car and someone stole my bag..

14) We \_\_\_\_\_ petrol from Saudi Arabia.

15) My son got good marks from the exams and I \_\_\_\_\_ him.



### VOCABULARY 6 OPPOSITE ADJECTIVES

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following adjectives with their opposites as in the example.

a) guilty	1) cold	1) <u>guilty</u>	X <u>innocent</u>
b) beautiful	2) useful	2)	Χ
c) clean	3) stingy	3)	Χ
d) expensive	4) wide	4)	Χ
e) strong	5) natural	5)	Χ
f) hot	6) slow	6)	Χ
g) harmful	7) sad	7)	Χ
h) narrow	8) quiet	8)	Χ
i) happy	9) ill	9)	Χ
j) fast	10) present	10)	Χ
k) absent	11) cheap	11)	X
1) artificial	12) weak	12)	X
m) noisy	13) innocent	13)	X
n) healthy	14) ugly	14)	X
o) generous	15) dirty	15)	X

#### B- Complete the following sentences with one of the adjectives from Exercise A.

I couldn't buy that car because it was too \_\_\_\_\_\_.
 The streets were \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday but they're \_\_\_\_\_now. They cleaned all of them.

3) Smoking is not \_\_\_\_\_\_ for our health. It's \_\_\_\_\_.

4) My friend wasn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the class. He was \_\_\_\_\_\_.

5) This cafe is too \_\_\_\_\_\_. Let's go to a \_\_\_\_\_\_ one.

6) Mr. Sabancı was a \_\_\_\_\_ man. He helped the poor.

7) The man wasn't \_\_\_\_\_. The judge found him \_\_\_\_\_ and released him.

8) The weather was very \_\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. We couldn't go out in day time.

9) His mother isn't \_\_\_\_\_. She is in hospital now.

- 10) The girl was very \_\_\_\_\_. The man asked her to marry him.
- 11) My friend is very \_\_\_\_\_. He can lift a car.

12) This car is too \_\_\_\_\_\_. I need a faster one.

13) The street was very \_\_\_\_\_. We couldn't park the car.

14) The lake in the middle of the park is not \_\_\_\_\_\_. It is artificial.

15) We have to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ to finish the work.



### VOCABULARY 7 ADJECTIVE PHRASES

#### **EXERCISES**

#### A- Match the following adjectives and nouns as in the example.

	1\1 '	
a) fast	1) hair	1) <u>colour TV</u>
b) green	2) wine	2)
c) colour	3) journey	3)
d) straight	4) environment	4)
e) fashionable	5) watch	5)
f) old	6) classroom	6)
g) digital	7) TV	7)
h) classical	8) restaurant	8)
i) crowded	9) room	9)
j) expensive	10) clothes	10)
k) single	11) car	11)
1) slow	12) dance	12)
m) heavy	13) metal	13)
n) long	14) sport	14)
o) dangerous	15) music	15)

#### B- Complete the following sentences using suitable adjective phrases from Exercise A.

1) There is \_\_\_\_\_\_ in every house.

2) Young people like \_\_\_\_\_, because they like speeding.

3) Teresa likes \_\_\_\_\_\_, especially Mozart.

4) My daughter has long \_\_\_\_\_\_.

5) Everybody in big cities wants a \_\_\_\_\_.

6) The couple offers theirs guests \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the parties.

7) Some young people listen to \_\_\_\_\_ music. They shake their heads.

8) In my opinion climbing, is a very \_\_\_\_\_\_.

9) I wanted to stay in \_\_\_\_\_\_, but they didn't have one.

10) Old people like \_\_\_\_\_.

11) I bought a \_\_\_\_\_\_ to my son for his birthday.

12) We liked the food but it was an \_\_\_\_\_.

13) It's a \_\_\_\_\_\_from Istanbul to Kars.

14) We don't have any \_\_\_\_\_ in our school.

15) My friend always wears \_\_\_\_\_\_.



### VOCABULARY 8 WORD RELATIONS WITH "HAVE"

HAVE an agreement breakfast / lunch / dinner a bath / a shower a party fun a seat a quarrel a good / nice / bad time a row a chat a look a holiday a picnic a rest

#### The verbs have (got) is not used in "Continuous Tenses" when it means "possess". Example:

I am having a pet. I have a pet.

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Complete the following sentences using one of the expressions above.

1) If the weather is fine, we will \_\_\_\_\_.

2) There were a lot of people in front of the bank. They \_\_\_\_\_

3) We \_\_\_\_\_\_ at a restaurant once a week.

4) I always \_\_\_\_\_\_ after playing football.

5) Don't stand up. Please, \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6) The children \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the park. They enjoyed it a lot.
- 7) The two governments \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the pipeline.

8) I'm very tired. I need to \_\_\_\_\_\_ in a peaceful place.

9) The workers worked hard and they \_\_\_\_\_\_ now.

10) \_\_\_\_\_\_ at your exam papers before the time is over.

11) Tomorrow is my son's birthday. He is going to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

12) My friends visited me yesterday. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ about this and that.



### VOCABULARY 9 WORD RELATIONS WITH "MAKE" AND "DO"

MAKE a discovery DO a favour a prediction homework an effort your best a cake / some food a job a mess harm a friend / friends maths / history (to study at school) a decision / choice well (to be successful) the housework a noise someone good (to improve someone's health) a phone call your teeth (brush your teeth) money a profit a bed (tidy a bed) a speech a visit / trip / journey a mistake / an error BUT: How do you do. = Pleased to meet you. a line / a circle / a group What do you do? = What is your job? an offer / arrangement rules / laws

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Complete the following sentences using one of the expressions above.

1) My friend \_\_\_\_\_\_ last year. He bought an expensive car. 2) Don't \_\_\_\_\_. The baby is sleeping. 3) \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ and don't tell it to anybody. 4) Children in the boarding school \_\_\_\_\_ their \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning. 5) I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the exam and I got low mark. 6) One of my students is \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_\_ science at university. 7) He \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the post office and bought some stamps. 8) We had some guests yesterday and my wife \_\_\_\_\_ a delicious \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning. 9) All the housewives \_\_\_\_\_ 10) The prime minister \_\_\_\_\_\_ about Turkish economy. 11) Please, \_\_\_\_\_\_ and win the exam. 12) The tourists \_\_\_\_\_\_ to Black Sea region. 13) Turkish and Greek governments \_\_\_\_\_\_ on Aegean problem. 14) My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ her room \_\_\_\_\_. Everything was on the floor. 15) They moved to Uşak last month, but they \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.



### VOCABULARY 10 WORD RELATIONS WITH "SAY" AND "TELL"

SAY good morning / afternoon, etc.. something / nothing / about one's prayers so a few words something to yourself TELL the truth a lie a secret a story the time the difference somebody one's name somebody the way one from another one's fortune

#### EXERCISE

#### A- Complete the following sentences using one of the expressions above.

- 1) Can you \_\_\_\_\_\_ between a city and a town?
- 2) Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ to the post office?
- 3) The fortune teller was \_\_\_\_\_\_ the girl's \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the park.
- 4) She \_\_\_\_\_\_ about it.
- 5) My grandmother used to \_\_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ every night.
- 6) He \_\_\_\_\_\_ and went to bed.
- 7) Can you \_\_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_, please? I am late for school.
- 8) Please, be honest and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) Don't tell anybody. I'll \_\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10) Everybody \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the God.
- 11) The police forced the murderer to \_\_\_\_\_ his partner's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13) You are very handsome. I know. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 14) Everybody \_\_\_\_\_\_ to one another when they meet in the morning.
- 15) There was nobody in the room. He was \_\_\_\_\_\_ himself.



### **INITIALS**

**AD**- Anno Domini - used to mark time that comes after the commonly accepted beginning of the Christian era

The ancient city was founded in 125 AD.

**AI**- Artificial Intelligence - used for robots etc

Many people in Japan electronic industry have been researching AI for many years now.

**AIDS**- Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome - a disease of the immune system

Recently the number of AIDS patients has been increasing rapidly in some European countries.

**AM**- Amplitude Modulation - a type of radio frequency

Young people don't listen to AM radio much because they like the songs that FM radios play.

#### **ASAP**- As Soon As Possible

Please finish the report about the budget and give it to me ASAP.

**BA**- Bachelor of Arts - from a university

My friend has received a BA in education from his university.

**B&B**- Bed and Breakfast - a small inn or hotel that serves breakfast

After driving for 24 hours, we stopped at a small B&B to have a rest.

**BSc**- Bachelor of Science - from a university

My son will receive a BSc in medicine from his university.

**BYOB**- Bring Your Own Bottle - used for a party or dinner where each person must bring something to drink

John decided to have a dinner party at his house next Sunday and told that it was BYOB.

#### **CEO**- Chief Executive Officer

Sakıp Sabancı was the CEO of Sabancı Companies.

**CIA**- Central Intelligence Agency - US spy and security organization

The CIA was involved in the efforts to free the hostage soldiers in Afghanistan.

**COD**- Cash On Delivery - used when a delivery person receives cash when he delivers something

My friend decided to send away for some books and the company said that they would send them to her COD.

#### **DIY**- Do-It-Yourself

My wife went to a DIY store and bought the materials to build a bookcase but it was not easy for her to do it.

#### **DJ**- Disc Jockey

In my free time I always wanted to work as a disc jockey while I was at university.

**DNA**- Deoxyribonucleic Acid - main constituent of the chromosomes of all organisms

Many medicine companies spend a lot of money in the study of DNA.

**ECG**- Electrocardiogram - an electronic test of a person's heart

I was asked to take an ECG test by my doctor last week.



eg- Exempli Gratia - Latin for example

My friend has travelled many countries around the world- eg Australia, Netherland, England.

#### **ESL**- English as a Second Language

The ESL classes at my school have been organized by language department.

#### **ETA**- Estimated Time of Arrival

My ETA will be 10 am when I return home next week.

#### FBI- Federal Bureau of Investigation

The killer was found in a worldwide search by the FBI.

**FM**- Frequency Modulation - a type of radio signal The radio station that we are fond of listening to is an FM station.

#### FYI- For Your Information

The manager wrote FYI on the information bulletin and sent it to the other staff.

**GMT**- Greenwich Mean Time - a place in England used as the standard for time around the world

The Olympic games will start at 11:00 AM tomorrow GMT.

**GP**- General Practitioner - a general doctor

I went to see a GP when I had blood pressure last week.

HIV- Human Immunodeficiency Virus

The rate of HIV infection among drug users is higher than we can imagine.

#### **HQ**- Headquarters

The HQ of the company is located in downtown in Istanbul.

**IMF**- International Monetary Fund - an international agency that works to stabilize currencies etc

The IMF imposed very strict currency guidelines to Turkey for many years and many people were opposed to.

**IQ**- Intelligence Quality - a measure of a person's intelligence

The IQ of my friend's son is very high.

#### LP- Long-Playing Record

My uncle has been collecting LPs of many singers and will give all of them to me.

#### **LPG**- Liquid Petroleum Gas

The truck carrying LPG was involved in an accident in Pendik last month and it was a real disaster.

#### MA- Master of Arts

My son has decided to study for his MA in education.

#### **MIA**- Missing In Action

According to most people in the United States there are still many MIA soldiers in Afghanistan and Iraq.

#### MC- Master of Ceremonies

My brother is always the MC for our relatives.

#### **MD**- Doctor of Medicine

My cousin received her MD when she was 22 years old and has been practicing medicine since then.



**MP**- Member of Parliament - used in the United Kingdom and Canada etc

There were several MPs at the meeting to protest the wars in the world.

#### MSc- Master of Science

The young man who has an MSc in computer science has been able to find a job easily.

**NASA**- National Aeronautics and Space Administration - the US space organization

According to a spokesperson for NASA the rocket won't be launched until next Sunday.

**NATO-** North Atlantic Treaty Organization

All members of NATO are gathering for an important meeting next month in İstanbul.

#### **OAP**- Old Age Pensioner

Some people in Turkey get OAP. They must be senior citizens.

#### **PC**- Personal Computer

Most of the teachers in my school have got PC and they make use of it a lot.

#### **PE**- Physical Education

When I was at school my favourite subject was PE but not in winter.

#### **PhD**- Doctor of Philosophy

If he can receive his PhD in economics he will get a job at the university.

**PM-** Post Meridiem - Latin for after noon

The school finishes at exactly 4:00 pm and we have a meeting everyday.

#### **POW**- Prisoner of War

The negotiations regarding POWs seem to continue for many years after the Iraq war.

#### **PR**- Public Relations

With good PR the politicians can easily gain the support of many people.

**PS**- Postscript - written at the end of a letter when you want to add some extra information

After finishing the main part of the letter the director wrote PS to include something very important.

#### **PTA**- Parent-Teacher Association

In our school we give special interest to PTA relations for the success of education.

**RSVP**- Respondez S'il Vous Plait -French for please reply

The invitation said RSVP so we quickly sent off a note to say that we would be able to attend conference.

#### **SOS**- Save Our Souls

international code signal of distress, call for help

Titanic had sent out many SOS signals but nobody was able to come to their rescue.

#### **TA**- Teaching Assistant

After finishing university I was able to get a job as a TA at a state school.

#### **UFO**- Unidentified Flying Object

The number of UFO sightings in Turkey has increased recently.



#### **UV**- Ultraviolet - a type of light ray

They used lots of sunscreen in order to protect the children from UV rays.

#### VCR- Video Cassette Recorder

The school bought a new VCR after the old one broke down.

#### **VHF**- Very High Frequency

The TV didn't work before the meeting because of a problem with the VHF connection.

#### VIP- Very Important Person

The football player was given the VIP treatment when he went his hometown.

#### **VP**- Vice-President

After serving faithfully as vice-president for 10 years Mr Black was appointed to the position of company president.

#### VTR- Video Tape Recorder

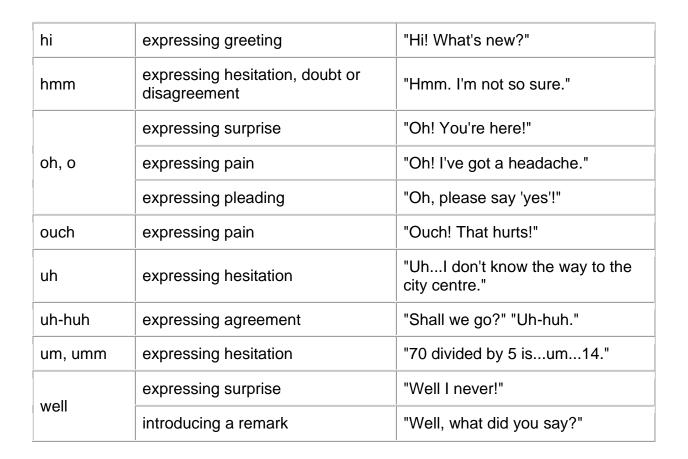
The VTR in the classroom wasn't working so we borrowed our friends'.

### **INTERJECTIONS**

**Interjection** is a big name for a little word. Interjections are short exclamations like **Oh!**, **Um** or **Ah!** They have no real grammatical value but we use them quite often, usually more in speaking than in writing. Here are some interjections with examples:

interjection	meaning	example	
	expressing pleasure	"Ah, that feels good."	
ab	expressing realization	"Ah, now I understand."	
ah	expressing resignation	"Ah well, it can't be helped."	
	expressing surprise	"Ah! I've done!"	
alas	expressing grief or pity	"Alas, It's dead now."	
dear	expressing pity	"Oh dear! Does it hurt?"	
dear	expressing surprise	"Dear me! That's a surprise!"	
	asking for repetition	"It's hot today." "Eh?" "I said it's hot today."	
eh	expressing enquiry	"What do you think of that, eh?"	
	expressing surprise	"Eh! Really?"	
	inviting agreement	"Let's go, eh?"	
er	expressing hesitation	"Lima is the capital of er Peru."	
	expressing greeting	"Hello John. How are you ?"	
hello, hullo	expressing surprise	"Hello! My bicycle's gone!"	
boy	calling attention	"Hey! look at that!"	
hey	expressing surprise, joy etc	"Hey! What a good news!"	









### **AFFIXES**

#### **1) NEGATIVE PREFIXES**

#### A) "mis-".

We add the prefix "mis-" to the verbs of skill. It means "badly, wrongly Examples:	y, incorrectly".
misgovern, mispronounce, misunderstand, misuse.	
Complete the following sentences:	
I didn't mean that. You me.	
His pronunciation is not good. He sometimes	the words.
B) "un-".	
We add the prefix "un-" to the adjectives. It means "not". Examples:	
unhappy, unusual, unkind, unbreakable, unfriendly, unnatural.	
Complete the following sentences:	
The girl was very sorry. She was	
The door is very strong. It is	
We heard a different sound. It was	
We add the prefix "un-" to the adjectives ending in (-ed)	
Examples:	
Uncooked, unboiled, unpolished, unsalted.	
Complete the following sentences:	
The meal is Please add some salt.	
Don't eat any food It is not healthy.	
We add the prefix "un-" to the verbs. It means "opposite action". Examples:	
Unbutton, uncover, untie, unfasten, unlock.	
Complete the following sentences:	
When we arrived, the door was locked, but my wife	it.
He ties his dog at night but it in the morning.	
It was hot so I my coat.	



C) "in-". We add "in-" to the adjectives. It means "not". Examples: informal, inactive, inorganic, insufficient, independent, incomplete. Complete the following sentences: Turkey is an \_\_\_\_\_ country. We will have a meeting. It's not formal. It is \_\_\_\_\_ The food is not sufficient. It is \_\_\_\_\_ If the adjective starts with "l, m, p, r", the prefix "in-" changes as follow. Examples: legal – illegal modest – immodest patient – impatient regular – irregular. **2) POSITIVE PREFIXES** A) "re-" We add the prefix "re-" to the verbs. It means "for a second time". Examples: reheat, retest, rewrite, reelect, redecorate, reorganize, replay. Complete the sentences: The handwriting is very bad. Please, \_\_\_\_\_ it. The President was \_\_\_\_\_. He was president last year, too. **B)** "pre-" We add the prefix "pre-" to the nouns. It means "before". Examples: prewar, preschool, prehistory. Complete the sentences: I advise the families to teach their children \_\_\_\_\_\_ activities. This book tells \_\_\_\_\_\_ events. We call the films which were made before the war "\_\_\_\_\_ films". **C) "pre-"** We add "pre-" to the verbs. It means "before the usual time". Examples: pretest, precheck, prefabricate, preselect. Complete the following sentences: The houses in the area are generally \_\_\_\_\_\_ houses. The students were \_\_\_\_\_\_ before the main exam.

D) "pro-" We add the prefix "pro-" to the nouns. It means "for". Examples: Prowar, proreform, proenvironment, proarmament. Complete the following sentences: He wants to make war. He is They protested the new factory. They are \_\_\_\_\_ E) "anti-" We add the prefix "anti" to the nouns. It means "against". Examples: antiwar, antireform, antiterrorist. Complete the following sentences: He doesn't want new reforms. He is \_\_\_\_\_. He doesn't want any fights. He is \_\_\_\_\_ F) "under-" We add "under-" prefix to the verbs. it means "too little". Examples: underdevelop, underuse, underfeed. Complete the following sentences: The housewives use the dish washer too little. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ it. They don't give the dog enough food. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ it. **G)** "over-" We add "over-" prefix to the verbs. it means "too much". Examples: overload, overuse, overfeed, overpay, overwork. Complete the following sentences: Most drivers \_\_\_\_\_\_ their trucks. In Turkey, most people \_\_\_\_\_\_ to earn enough money. **3) SUFFIXES** A) "-ic", "-tic" We use the suffix "-ic" or "-tic" to get adjectives from scientific nouns. Examples:

economy - economic, history - historic drama - dramatic, idiom - idiomatic.

Complete the following sentences: There is a big \_\_\_\_\_ problem in most countries . The story of the poor boy was very \_\_\_\_\_. **B) "-al"** We use the suffix "-al" to get adjectives from nouns. Examples: music – musical, mathematic – mathematical, logic – logical, critic – critical. Complete the following sentences: Everybody should play a \_\_\_\_\_\_ instrument. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ expressions in the newspaper. C) "-en" We use the suffix "en" to make verbs from adjectives. It means "make things happen". Examples: tight – tighten, dark – darken, hard – harden, white – whiten. Complete the following sentences: There were black clouds. The sky \_\_\_\_\_\_. The concrete became hard. It \_\_\_\_\_\_. D) "-ify" We use the suffix "-ify" to get verbs from nouns and adjectives. Example: class - classify, clear - clarify, simple - simplify, beautiful - beautify, Complete the following sentences: They painted the walls and cleaned the garden. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ it. The text was very difficult and long, but the teacher \_\_\_\_\_\_ it. E) "-ize" We use the suffix "-ize" to get verbs from nouns and adjectives. Examples: atom – atomize, summary – summarize, pasteur – pasteurize, legal – legalize. Complete the following sentences: The teacher wanted the students to \_\_\_\_\_\_the books. The factories always the milk.



### PHRASAL VERBS

- 1) **Bring up** (look after and educate someone) His uncle *brought* him *up*.
- 2) **Call off** (cancel something) They *called off* all the flights.
- 3) Fill in (complete something, take someone's place,)I *filled in* the application form.The goalkeeper was injured. The substitute *filled in*.
- 4) **Find out** (learn about / discover) The police *found out* the thief.
- 5) **Give away** (make a gift of, make something known) The man who won the lottery *gave* all the money *away*. I warned my friend not to *give* my secret *away*.
- 6) Give up (stop / stop trying) My friend *gave up* smoking. After trying hard, my brother finally *gave up*
- 7) **Knock out** (make unconscious) The boxer *knocked out* his rival.
- 8) Make up (invent, become friends again) Some children *make up* stories. The players quarrelled. But I am sure they will *make up*.
- 9) **Pick up** (collect) My friend will *pick* me *up* at 9:00.
- 10) **Put off** (postpone, discourage from) They *put* the match *off* until next week. The rain *put* me *off* going out.
- 11) **Show around** (give a guided tour) Can you *show* me *around* the city?
- 12) **Break down** (stop working) Our car *broke down* on the way to Ankara.
- 13) Get away (escape) The thieves *got away* in a taxi.
- 14) **Look out** (beware) *Look out*! There is a piece of stone on the road.



- 15) **Take off** (leave the ground) The plane *took off* in time.
- 16) **Turn up** (increase) *Turn* the music *up*, please.
- 17) **Cut down** (reduce) I decided to *cut down* on eating bread.
- 18) **Get along with** (have a good relation with) I *get along with* my new director.
- 19) Keep up with (stay in the same place)You are talking too much. I can't *keep up with* you.
- 20) **Call on** (visit) Yesterday I *called on* my friend at his school.
- 21) **Come across** (find by chance) I *came across* my old pictures in the drawer.
- 22) **Go over** (discuss the details) The ministers are *going over* the strategy.
- 23) **Look forward to** (wait to pleasure and excitement) I am *looking forward to* going on holiday.
- 24) **Come into** (inherit) He *came into* a house.
- 25) **Deal with** (take action about) Most cities *deal with* the pollution problem.
- 26) **Do without** (manage without) The children will *do without* a holiday next year.
- 27) **Turn down** (decrease) *Turn* the music *down*, please.
- 28) **Wear off** (fade away) The perfume doesn't smell good. I hope, it will *wear off* in a short time.
- 29) **Hold up** (rob) The robbers *held up* the bank.
- 30) **Fall out** (quarrel) The couples have *fallen out* again.



# JOKES

# Find out about the cat

A chauffeur worked for a woman who took her cat with her on rides. During one trip, the driver dropped her at a mall before gassing up. The cat remained in the car, laying down on the top of the limousine's back seat. The service station's attendant often glanced at unusual passenger. Finally, he asked: "Sir, is that cat someone important?"

# Writing to Grandma

A little boy wrote this letter to his grandmother: Dear Grandmother,

I'm sorry I forgot your birthday last week. It would serve me right if you forgot mine next Tuesday. With love, Mike

# Writing letters to son

One student fell into a cycle of classes, studying, working and sleeping. Didn't realize how long he had neglected writing home until he received the following note:

"Dear Son, Your mother and I enjoyed your last letter. Of course, we were much younger then, and more impressionable. Love, Dad

# **Screen Savers**

Me: "I have put this Movie Magic screen-saver on for you." Manager: "Wow, that's a nice picture." Me: "Yeah, it's not bad, is it?" Manager: "Can you set the screen-saver so the picture *doesn't* change?" Me: "Huh?" Manager: "You know, so the same picture stays there while we work?" Me: "Oh! You want this as the wallpaper?" Manager: (angrily) "No! I don't want you to start decorating the office!"

I sold my old computer to a friend's friend. He never called me again. Some months latter I saw him and ask him how it was going. He told me that he had thrown it away because it was broken. When I asked him what the problem was, he told me that when he stopped typing for a while, the image on the screen started to melt and slip to the bottom, leaving a black space. If he touched the mouse or the keyboard, everything returned to normal. He was convinced I sold him a defective machine and dumped the perfectly good computer. Apparently he hasn't ever heard of screen savers, and I forgot to tell him I had installed one named "Screen Melt FX."



# **IDIOMS**

# **FOOD IDIOMS**

# apple of one's eye

- someone or something that one likes a lot

My children are the apples of my eye.

1																																																												
		•									•				•		•																																											
		•		,			•	,			•				•		•				•		•	,			,							,			,			,	,	•		•				•					•				,			
	,	•	•	,	•	•	•	,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	,	•	•	,	•	•	•	•	•	•	,	•	•	,	•	•	,	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	,	•	•	

# bread and butter

- basic needs of life (food, shelter, clothing)

In some places people work just for butter and bread.

.....

# coffee break

- a break from work to rest and drink coffee

The workers in that factory take a 20- minute coffee break everyday at 10:30

.....

# as cool as a cucumber

- calm, not nervous or anxious

The principal is always as cool as a cucumber and he never worries about anything.

.....

# duck soup

- a task that doesn't require much effort

It was duck soup for the young man to finish the work.

.....

# eat one's words

- take back something one has said, admit something is not true The boy told the girl that he wouldn't call her again but later he ate his words and called the girl.

.....

.....

# **finger in the pie** - participate in something that is happening

Children always try to keep their fingers in the pie.

.....

# half-baked

- not thought out or studied carefully

The writer has a half baked idea about starting a new novel.

.....

.....

# hot potato

- a question or argument that is controversial and difficult to settle

The issue of getting tax from the cars for the second time was a real hot potato.

.....

.....

# in the soup

- in serious trouble, in disorder

Some students are in the soup now. They told they were at school but their parents saw them at the cinema.

.....

# make one's mouth water

- look or smell very good, want to eat or drink very much

Whenever I go to that restaurant and see the menu, it makes my mouth water.

# piece of cake

- *a task that is easily accomplished* It was a piece of cake. She had finished everything before the guests arrived.

.....

# sell like hotcakes

- sell quickly or rapidly

The new cassette of Tarkan has only been released for three days but it is selling like hotcakes.

.....

#### spill the beans

- tell a secret to someone who is not supposed to know about it

Please don't spill the beans about his plans to start another job next month.

······

# **Head/Mouth Idioms**

#### absent-minded

- forgetful

My father is very absent-minded and he always forgets his glasses at home.

.....

at or on the tip of one's tongue - at the point of being said, almost remembered

I can't remember the shop's name. It's on the tip of my tongue.

.....

# bad-mouth

- say bad things about someone

Some children were bad-mouthing their friends.

beat into one's head

- teach by telling again and again, drill

The teacher has been trying to beat English into the students' head.

.....

.....

**beat one's head against a wall** - struggle uselessly against something, not succeed after trying very hard

The man was beating his head against the wall trying to change his friend's behaviour.

.....

# .....

**born with a silver spoon in one's mouth** *- born to wealth and comfort, born rich* 

Bill Gates' son was born with a silver spoon in his mouth.

.....

# .....

#### button one's lip

- stop talking, keep a secret, be quiet

When you attend a meeting, please button your lip.

.....

# .....

#### by word of mouth

- Orally, from person to person by the spoken word

We learned that the governor would visit our school next Monday by word of mouth.



# cross one's mind - be a sudden or passing thought, come to one's mind It suddenly crossed his mind that he had left the door open. go to one's head - make someone too proud, make a person think he or she is too important The new position has gone to his head and he thinks that he is a very important person. ..... hair stands on end - the hair of one's head rises because of fright When my wife saw the accident her hair stood on end. ..... head-hunting - search for qualified individuals to fill certain positions The school principal has been head hunting for weeks to find new teachers. hold one's tongue - be silent, not talk

"Please hold your tongues", the teacher said to the students.

.....

.....

**keep one's mouth shut** - be or stay silent

I can't keep my mouth shut if someone does or says something wrong.

make up one's mind - choose what to do, decide

I have still not made up my mind whether to accept the offer or not.

.....

.....

put our heads together

- confer, discuss, talk

We put our heads together with the family members to discuss the problem.

.....

# put words into one's mouth

- say without proof that another person has certain feelings or opinions

His mother put words into his mouth when he told that he wanted to go on a week trip.

.....

# din of the tengue

slip of the tongue

- the mistake of saying something one had not wanted or planned to say, an error of speech

The minister made a slip of the tongue while he was talking to the journalists that he would resign.



# **Heart idioms**

#### at heart

- in spite of, in reality

Our teacher seems to be very angry at all time but at hearth he's a very gentle person

•••••	•••••	•••••	

# break one's heart

- make very sad or hopeless

It broke my son's heart to learn that he failed the exam after he had studied so hard.

from the bottom of one's heart

- with great feeling, sincerely

After the earthquake Turkey thanked all the countries from the bottom of her heart for their help.

.....

#### from the heart

- sincerely, honestly

The Prime Minister gave a speech from the heart after the elections.

.....

# heart is in the right place

- kind-hearted, sympathetic or wellmeaning

Teachers love all the students because they know that their hearts are in the right place.

.....

# heart of stone

- a nature without pity

The mother who left her children in the street has a heart of stone.

.....

.....

# heart stand still

- be very frightened or worried

My heart stood still when I saw my little son on the roof.

.....

.....

# heart-to-heart

- speaking freely and seriously about something private

I had a heart-to-heart talk with my wife yesterday.

.....

# .....

# open one's heart

- talk about one's feelings honestly, confide in someone

When she met her old friend she opened her heart.

.....

#### take heart

- be encouraged, feel braver and want to try

The government took heart in the fact that the inflation was decreasing.

.....

# .....

# with all one's heart

- with great feeling, sincerely

The boy tried with all his heart to persuade the girl to marry him.

# heavy heart

- a feeling of being weighed down with sorrow, unhappiness

We left our friend's house with a heavy heart when we learned that he had a serious illness.

.....

# **Medical Idioms**

at death's door

- very near death

After the accident most of the passengers were at death's door.

.....

back on one's feet
- physically healthy again

After having a serious operation his wife is back on her feet again.

.....

breathe one's last

- to die

The man breathed his last before his children arrived.

.....

# bring around/round

- restore to health or consciousness, cure

Doctors managed to bring the small child around after the accident.

catch a cold

- get a cold

My daughter caught a bad cold and missed five days of school.

**catch one's death of cold** - become very ill (with a cold, flu etc)

His wife caught her death of cold after walking in the rain for a long time.

.....

```
.....
```

# check-up

- a periodic inspection of a patient by a doctor

Everybody should have annual check up.

.....

# feel on top of the world

- feel very healthy

I have been feeling on top of the world since I started running everyday.

.....

# .....

# go under the knife

- be operated on in surgery

Most people are afraid of going under the knife.

```
.....
```

.....

# have a physical (examination)

- get a medical check-up

All the footballers had a physical before the league started.

.....

.....

# on the mend

- healing, becoming better



The poor woman is on the mend after she broke her leg last month.

.....

**run a temperature** *-have a higher than normal body temperature* 

My daughter ran a temperature and stayed in bed all day yesterday.

.....

#### run down

- get into poor condition

Because of the bad working conditions most workers ran down.

.....

#### run some tests

-a doctor does some medical tests on a patient

To find out the illness the doctors have run some tests on my mother.

.....

#### splitting headache

- a severe headache

If I don't sleep well I always have a splitting headache the next day.

.....

# take someone's temperature

- measure someone's body temperature

When she took her child to the hospital the nurse took the child's temperature first.

.....

# **Money Idioms**

#### at all costs

- at any expense of time, effort or money

I plan to go on holiday at all costs.

.....

.....

# back on one's feet

- return to good financial health

My brother is back on his feet after the economic crisis.

.....

# .....

#### bring home the bacon

- earn the family living

I have been working hard for five years to bring home the bacon for my family.

.....

#### bottom dollar

- one's last dollar

I spent my bottom dollar on my father's drugs..

.....

.....

#### bottom line

- line in a financial statement that shows net income or loss

The bottom line in the company's financial statement was better than expected.

.....

# bottom line

- final result, main point

The bottom line was that we had to move our house.



# bet on the wrong horse

- base one's plans on a wrong guess about the results of something

He betted on the wrong horse supporting the other candidate for chairman.

.....

# break the bank

- win all the money at a casino gambling table

My friend broke the bank and bought an expensive car.

.....

#### cash in on

- make money from an opportunity

Most pop stars cash in on their popularity and live a very wealthy life.

.....

.....

#### cheapskate

- a person who will not spend much money, a stingy person

The director is a cheapskate and won't even buy us a meal.

.....

.....

# chicken feed

- a small amount of money

My daughter makes a lot of money saving chicken feed.

.....

#### clean up

- make a lot of money, make a big profit

Two young men cleaned up at the horse races last week and bought what they wanted.

#### deadbeat

- person who never pays the money he owes

Some banks have been making an effort to solve the problem of deadbeat customers.

.....

.....

### face value

- *the worth or price printed on a stamp, bond, note or paper money etc.* The face value of the coin was very low but in reality it was worth a fortune.

.....

### fast buck

- money earned quickly and easily (and sometimes dishonestly)

Some people try to make a fast buck on the property but in fact they lose a lot.

.....

.....

# **feel like a million dollars/bucks** *- feel wonderful*

After the operation she felt like a million dollars.

.....

# flat broke

- having no money, penniless

Mrs Black was flat broke and didn't even have enough money to buy food.







#### red cent

- the smallest coin, a trivial sum of money

I wouldn't give a red cent for that coat.

.....

# stone broke

- having no money, penniless

After the holiday most of the students were stone broke.

.....

#### (not worth) two cents

- almost nothing, something not important or very small

The equipment he needs to repair the door is not worth two cents.

.....

# **Negotiations Idioms**

#### at stake

- something to be lost or gained

There was a lot at stake during the negotiations between the unions and the government

.....

.....

#### beat around the bush

- talk about things without giving a clear answer

The President spent the meeting beating around the bush.

.....

### bone of contention

- the subject or reason for a fight

The cost of the bridge was a bone of contention during the talks between the company and the government.

.....

#### break down

- fail, stop

The negotiations between the two companies broke down last night.

.....

.....

#### break off

- stop or end suddenly

The union broke off talks about the salary.

.....

.....

#### break through

- be successful after overcoming a difficulty

After three week negotiations there was a breakthrough in the talks.

.....

# bring off

- perform successfully

The teachers could bring off the exam questions and were ready to give the test.

.....

.....

### bring to terms

- make someone agree or do something

At first it seemed impossible for the two companies to agree on price but finally they brought to terms.



### bring up

- begin a discussion of or mention something

The manager brought up the subject and everybody explained their ideas.

.....

#### call off

- stop, quit, cancel

The meeting was called off because of the bad weather conditions.

.....

.....

# come to terms

- reach an agreement

After discussing the problem for a week both sides came to terms for building a new system.

.....

#### come up

- become a subject for discussions or decision

Everything related to discipline problems at school came up during the meeting.

.....

come up with

- produce or find a thought, idea or answer

The director asked the people to come up with new ideas about the project.

.....

### draw the line

- set a limit to what will be done

The company drew the line for the employees to use the computers.

draw up

- put in writing, write something in its correct form

I drew up the contract with the landlord.

.....

```
.....
```

### drive a hard bargain

- make an agreement to one's advantage, bargain hard

My wife drew a hard bargain with the real estate agent for the house.

.....

# fifty-fifty

- equally, evenly

When I go somewhere with my friends we share the expenses fifty-fifty.

.....

.....

#### force one's hand

- make someone do something or tell what one will do sooner than planned

During the negotiations both sides forced their hands.

.....

#### .....

#### get the message

- understand clearly what is meant

When I looked at one of my students who was trying to cheat he got the message and gave up.

# get to first base

- make a good start, succeed

We haven't been able to get to first base with the other side about the terms of the new contract.

.....

# get to the bottom of/ heart of

- find the most important facts or central meaning of something

The Police tried to get to the bottom / heart of the problem with the burglary.

.....

# hard-nosed

- very strict, stubborn

The referee took a hard-nosed position during the match and showed three red cards.

.....

# horse trade

- a business agreement or bargain arrived at after hard bargaining

After several days of horse trading the company succeeded to sell the new computers to the other company.

.....

# in the bag

- certain

He was sure of himself that the match was in the bag.

.....

.....

# lay one's cards on the table

- let someone know one's position openly, deal honestly

I always lay my cards on the table during the meetings.

.....

# 

# off the record - not to be published or told, secret

The minister told the journalists off the record that he would resign after the holiday.

.....

```
.....
```

# pull off

- succeed in doing something difficult or impossible

The brakes of the bus failed but the driver pulled it off to stop it..

.....

.....

# put one's cards on the table

- let someone know one's position openly, deal honestly

After long discussions both sides put their cards on the table.

.....

# read between the lines

- understand the meaning of something by guessing at what is left unsaid

If you want to understand that poet you should read between the lines.

.....

# take sides

- join one group against another in a debate or quarrel

Parents mustn't take sides in the discussions of their children.

### talk into

- get someone to agree to something, persuade

The government tried hard to talk the other parties into the early elections.

.....

#### talk out of

- persuade not to do something

The man tried to talk his wife out of divorcing.

.....

talk over

- discuss something

The teachers were talking over the success rate of the school in the exam.

.....

# **Birds Idioms**

# bird in the hand is worth two in the bush

- one shouldn't risk losing something certain by trying to get something that is not certain

People should keep the things well until they get the better one . Remember bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

.....

.....

#### birds and bees

- the facts about sex and birth

Some parents teach their children about the birds and bees.

.....

# birds-eye view

- a general view from above My house in the village has got a birdseye view of the town.

.....

.....

# ------

birds of a feather flock together

- people who are similar become friends or join together

It's no use complaining about your friends. Remember birds of a feather flock together.

# .....

.....

# .....

# chicken-livered

- cowardly, easily scared

The man called his wife chicken-livered that she screamed when she saw a spider.

.....

# count one's chickens before they're hatched

- depend or rely on getting something before one has it

Don't count your chickens before they're hatched - remember the match hasn't finished yet.

.....

.....

# duck soup

- a task that does not require much effort

The match was duck soup for my team. They won 6-0.

# early bird catches the worm

- a person who gets up early in the morning has the best chance of success

My father gets up at 5 o'clock and says the early bird catches the worm

.....

### eat like a bird

- eat very little

The little girl is sick she has been eating like a bird.

.....

# kill the goose that lays the golden egg

- spoil something that is good or something that one has by being greedy

The government sold the telephone company . I think that they have killed the goose that lays the golden egg.

.....

.....

# kill two birds with one stone

- succeed in doing two things by only one action

My friend went to Ankara for a conference and visited his family so he killed two birds with one stone.

.....

# ugly duckling

- ugly or plain child (who grows up to be pretty)

My parents say that I was an ugly duckling when I was a child.

.....

# **Body Idioms**

### bad blood

- anger or a bad relationship due to past problems with someone

Since the family had bad blood with another family they left the village.

.....

.....

#### behind one's back

- when one is absent or without one's knowledge, secretly

Stop talking about her. I don't like talking behind people's back.

.....

# blood is thicker than water

- family members are closer to one another than to others

When the young man heard the accident news he first tried to find his wife because blood is thicker than water.

# .....

# cold shoulder

- *unfriendly treatment of a person* Old players gave the new player cold shoulder and he was very unhappy.

.....

# .....

# cut one's throat

- spoil one's chances, ruin a person

This is your last chance. Stop cutting your throat.

.....

# .....

# flesh and blood

- a close relative (father, daughter, brother)

It's my own flesh and blood who help me when I need money.



#### - making insistent demands of one, being ..... an annoyance or bother hold one's breath - stop breathing for a moment when one is The little girl is always on her daughter's back to do her homework. excited or nervous When they announced the exam results I ..... held my breath and waited. ..... on one's shoulders - one's responsibility ..... After the earthquake his brother's family jump down one's throat - suddenly become very angry at someone was on his shoulders. When he hit my son I jumped down his throat. ..... save one's breath - keep silent because talking will not do any good keep body and soul together If they insist on not understanding the - keep alive, survive problem, save your breath. When the ship sank the crew of the ship tried to keep body and soul together. save one's neck - save from danger or trouble ..... (not) move a muscle - move very little (usually used in the In the accident everybody tried to save his *negative*) own neck While his wife was cleaning the house he ..... didn't move a muscle. skin and bones - a person or animal that is very thin, neck and neck someone very skinny - equal or nearly equal in a race or contest, tied The boy became skin and bones after his girlfriend had left him. The two candidates ran neck and neck until the end of the election. turn one's back on - refuse to help someone in trouble or need Someone who turns his back on his friends is not a real friend.

on one's back





# **Business Idioms**

### at a loss

- sell something and lose money

To pay the hospital bill, the man sold his car at a loss.

.....

.....

# bottom out

- reach the lowest or worst point of something

The value of the stock began to bottom out and should soon begin to increase in value.

.....

# boys in the backroom

- a group of men making decisions behind the scenes

The boys in the backroom told the man not to open a new restaurant.

.....

# budget squeeze/crunch

- a situation where there is not enough money in the budget

After leaving the job the man has been going through a budget squeeze.

.....

**by a long shot** - by a big difference, by far

The Mayor won the election by a long shot.

.....

# calculated risk

- an action that may fail but has a good chance to succeed We took a calculated risk when we decided to accept the job offer in İstanbul. carry the day

- win completely

The new chairman's new project carried the day and everybody congratulated him.

.....

.....

# carry through

- put into action

The government carried through the new law to restructure the education system.

.....

.....

# close out

- sell the whole of something, sell all the goods

Because of the economic problems they decided to close out the supermarket.

.....

.....

# close the books

- stop taking orders, end a bookkeeping period

The companies in Turkey close the books at the end of January.

.....

.....

# company town

- a town dominated by one industry or company

When the timber company closed down the company town faced severe economic problems.





# heads will roll

- someone will be punished

Heads will roll when the team loses the

- .....
- in control of, responsible for

I am in charge of preparing all the English tests for school.

.....

- in the final result

You can't earn money in a short time . You should think it in the long run.

.....

# (buy) on credit

- buy something without paying cash

After having some problems with my bank I decided not to buy anything on credit.

.....

- not have enough in quantity

While they were driving to London they ran short of Petrol.

# 

- take advantage of an opportunity

They will strike while the iron is hot and market all the swimsuits in Summer.





#### sweetheart deal

- a deal made between friends so that both may make a big profit

We made a sweetheart deal with friend and built a new house.

.....

### take over

- take control or possession of something, take charge or responsibility

His father decided to take over the company after his son lost a lot of money.

.....

.....

#### turn over

- to buy and then sell something to customers

The yearly turn-over of the company was about 3 million \$.

.....

# **Clothes Idioms**

# air one's dirty linen in public

- tell about one's private quarrels or problems where others can hear

I can't stand my wife airing my dirty linen in public.

.....

.....

# below the belt

- in an unfair or cowardly way

In most of the critics people try to hit below the belt.

.....

# birthday suit

- complete nakedness

At the lakeside two little boys were running around in their birthday suit.

.....

.....

# catch with one's pants down

- surprise someone in an embarrassing situation or a guilty act

The thief was caught with his pants down when he stole a computer from a house.

.....

.....

- die with one's boots on
- die while still active in one's work

Mr Sabancı worked hard all his life and died with his boots on.

dressed to the nines (teeth)

#### - dressed elegantly

All the people were dressed to the nines when they went to the best model ceremony.

.....

.....

#### dress up

- put on one's best clothes

His wife tries to dress up when they go out for dinner.

.....

# .....

#### fill one's shoes

- take the place of another and do as well

It will be difficult for the person who will fill the shoes of the previous Mayor.



# if the shoe fits wear it

- that what is said in general can also be said of an individual person

Never criticize others for the things that you would do yourself. Remember, if the shoe fits wear it.

.....

#### in one's shoes

- in another's place or position

My son says that he would hate to be in my shoes that I work hard.

.....

# lose one's shirt

- lose all or most of one's money

The young actor lost his shirt gambling and now he is in serious financial difficulty.

.....

# off the cuff

- without preparation

I never like off-the-cuff speech. I don't feel relaxed.

.....

.....

pull up one's socks
- make a greater effort

It's time for the students that they pull up their socks and begin to study for the final exam.

.....

# shoe is on the other foot

- the opposite is true, places are changed

When I made a mistake my friend laughed at me. Now the shoe is on the other foot.

.....

too big for one's breeches/bootsthink that you are more important than you really are

Some people are too big for their breeches and they don't like people who make them realize that they are not very important.

.....

.....

# wolf in sheep's clothing

- a person who pretends to be good but really is bad

Her mother warned daughter to be careful that there are wolves in sheep's clothing.

.....

# **Colour Idioms**

# black and white

- thinking of everything or judging everything as either good or bad

One of the problems that young people have is that they can't see in black and white.

.....

.....

# black sheep (of the family)

- a person who is a disgrace to a family or group

The boy who was dismissed from the school was the black sheep in his family.

.....

# blue in the face

- very angry or upset, excited and very emotional

Two women argued on the road and they were blue in face.

# .....

catch (someone) red-handed

- catch someone in the middle of doing something wrong

The robbers were caught red handed at the bank trying to rob it.

.....

grass is always greener on the other side

- a place that is far away or different seems better than where we are now

The man realized that the grass is greener on the other side when he bought his new car that it wasn't perfect.

.....

als at (and) the second through rade

# look at (see) the world through rosecolored glasses

- see only the good things about something, be too optimistic

Some young people always look at the world through rose-colored glasses and can't see the difficulties.

.....

# pot calling the kettle black

- the person who is criticizing someone else is as guilty as the person he accuses

One student criticized the other for not getting good mark but that was like the pot calling the kettle black. He got bad mark , too.

.....

.....

# red-letter day

- a day that is memorable because of some important event

It was a red-letter day for my son when he graduated from high school.

show one's true colours

- show what one is really like

I don't like people who tell lie and don't show their true colours.

.....

.....

#### white as a ghost

- very pale because of fear, shock, illness etc.

The child became white as a ghost when he saw the big dog in the garden.

.....

#### white lie

- a harmless lie (told to be polite or to do something not seriously wrong)

I sometimes tell a white lie and say that I was very busy at work and I was late.

.....

# **Arm/Hand/Leg Idioms**

#### all thumbs

- clumsy, have difficulty fixing things or working with one's hands

My friends say I am all thumbs and can never fix things without making them worse.

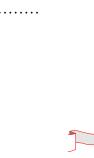
.....

# 

# at hand

- easy to reach, nearby

My father is very tidy and wants any tools near at hand.



Unfortunately our relationship with my girlfriend got off on the wrong foot. ..... give one's right arm - give something of great value I would give my right arm to help my wife with her illness. ..... ..... give someone a hand - help someone with something My friends gave me a hand moving into new office. ..... glad hand - a friendly handshake, a warm greeting The new director glad handed the people in the Office all day. ..... ..... hands-down - easy, unopposed The mayor won the election hands-down for the second time. live from hand to mouth - live on very little money A lot of people in Turkey have been living from hand to mouth since they have no job. 

get off on the wrong foot

- make a bad start, begin with a mistake

bite the hand that feeds one - turn against or hurt a helper or supporter, repay kindness with wrong My niece will be biting the hand that feeds

her if she keeps abusing the help that her parents are giving her. 

# burn one's fingers

- learn caution through an unpleasant experience

A lot of people burned their fingers on the stock market and don't want to invest money there again.

..... 

# cross one's fingers

- cross two fingers of one hand to hope or wish for good luck

I crossed my fingers that my team would be able to win the match.

# dirty one's hands

- hurt one's character or good name, do a bad or shameful thing

The director dirtied his hands when he became involved in the questionable money deals.

# one foot in the grave

- near death

One of our neighbours is suffering from cancer and has one foot in the grave.

# feet on the ground

- an understanding of what can be done, sensible ideas

The new Prime minister has his feet on the ground and will probably be able to come up with a sensible solution to country's problems.

.....

# shake a leg

- go fast, hurry

"Please try and shake a leg. We are already late for the film."

.....

#### stand on one's own two feet

- be independent

Most parents try to do something to make their children stand on their own two feet.

.....

.....

#### tail between one's legs

- state of feeling beaten, ashamed, or very obedient, as after a scolding or a whipping

The man left the office with his tail between his legs after he admitted telling a lie about the product.

.....

# twist/wrap someone around one's little finger

- have complete control over

Most wives have their husbands wrapped around their little fingers and they are able to do anything that they want.

.....

.....

# with open arms

- warmly, eagerly, show that one is glad to see someone

We were welcomed with open arms when we went to my hometown for the first time.

.....

# Eye/Ear/Nose Idioms

# all ears

-very eager to hear, very attentive The people on the other table were all ears while the couple was talking angrily.

.....

.....

# all eyes

 watching very closely, wide-eyed with surprise

I am all eyes when I go to the museum for the first time.

.....

.....

#### believe one's ears

- believe what one hears, become sure of (something)

The man couldn't believe his ears when he heard that he had won the lottery.

.....

.....

#### believe one's eyes

- believe what one sees, become sure of seeing something

She couldn't believe her eyes when she saw that his car's windscreen was broken.

.....

.....

# catch one's eye

- attract one's attention

When the woman went home her daughter tried to catch her eye.

#### $\leq$

### eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth

- every crime or injury should be punished or paid back

In some countries people are always calling for an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.

.....

#### hit between the eyes

- make a strong impression on, surprise greatly

The news about the illness hit the family between the eyes and totally shocked them.

.....

#### keep an eye on

- watch carefully, continue paying attention to

We asked our neighbours to keep an eye on our house when we went away for the weekend..

.....

.....

### keep one's nose clean

- stay out of trouble

Most parents and teachers advise young people to keep their nose clean in the street.

.....

# keep one's nose out of something

- keep out of or away from

The prisoner promised the judge that he would keep his nose out of other people's business.

.....

# lend/give an ear to

#### - listen to

I always try to lend an ear to the people when they tell me their problems.

.....

.....

#### turn a deaf ear to

- pretend not to hear, not pay attention

I turned a deaf ear to the complaints of my boss about the cost of the new product.

.....

# **Numbers Idioms**

### all in one

- combined

I can use my mobile phone for talking and taking photos all in one.

# .....

.....

# at sixes and sevens

- in a state of confusion

The workers were at sixes and sevens after they heard that the factory would stop.

.....

# .....

kill two birds with one stone

- achieve two aims with one effort/action If you learn a foreign language and computer at school you will kill two birds with one stone.

.....

# one and only

- the only person or thing

The factory is manufacturing the one and only jet plane in the world.





one by one - individually, one at a time

Students left the classroom one by one.

.....

# one good turn deserves another

- if someone helps you it is fair to help them in return

One good turn deserves another so I tried to help the family who had helped me when I was a student.

.....

#### put two and two together

- make a correct guess

The police put two and two together and caught the thief.

.....

# seventh heaven

- in a situation of great happiness

The young man has been in seventh heaven since his girlfriend accepted to marry him.

.....

# six feet under

- *dead and buried* My mother has been six feet under for over eight years now.

.....

# two heads are better than one

- *it is better to work with another person to solve problems etc* 

Two heads are usually better than one when you are working on a Project.

.....

# two wrongs don't make a right

- you can't justify a wrong action by saying that someone else did the same thing to you

If your friend does something bad to you, you should not try and hurt him as well because two wrongs don't make a right

.....

# **Animals Idioms**

# badger someone

- get someone to do something by repeated questions or by bothering them

I don't like people who badger me to do something.

.....

.....

# bark up the wrong tree

- choose the wrong course of action

The Police are barking up the wrong tree. They accuse the man of killing the woman but he was away at the time.

.....

.....

# bet on the wrong horse

*- misread the future* I hate betting on the wrong horse and I double-check everything before I decide.

.....

# .....

cat get one's tongue

- can't speak because of shyness

The cat has got his tongue. The boy did not say anything at all.

#### cat nap

- a short sleep taken during the day

Doctors advice to have a cat nap during the afternoon so people would feel refreshed in the evening.

.....

#### change horses in midstream

- make new plans or choose a new leader in the middle of an important activity

Choose one way and don't change horses in midstream.

.....

#### copycat

- someone who copies another person's work etc.

Her friends say that she is a copycat in the class.

.....

.....

#### curiosity killed the cat

- being too nosy may lead a person into trouble

We shouldn't worry about what others are doing. Remember curiosity killed the cat.

.....

### donkey's years

- a very long time

I decided to visit my sister because I hadn't seen her in donkey's years.

.....

# eat like a horse

- eat a lot

Some people eat like a horse.

# lead a dog's life

- work hard and be treated unkindly

The man is leading a dog's life since he started that job.

.....

.....

# let sleeping dogs lie

- don't make trouble if you don't have to

You should let sleeping dogs lie and not ask people any questions about the argument.

# .....

#### look a gift horse in the mouth

- complain if a gift is not perfect

people shouldn't look a gift horse in the mouth and they should be happy that they get a present..

.....

# monkey business

- unethical or bad activity, mischief

If you want to live honestly you should stop that monkey business and try to do the job the correct way.

# .....

### play cat and mouse with someone

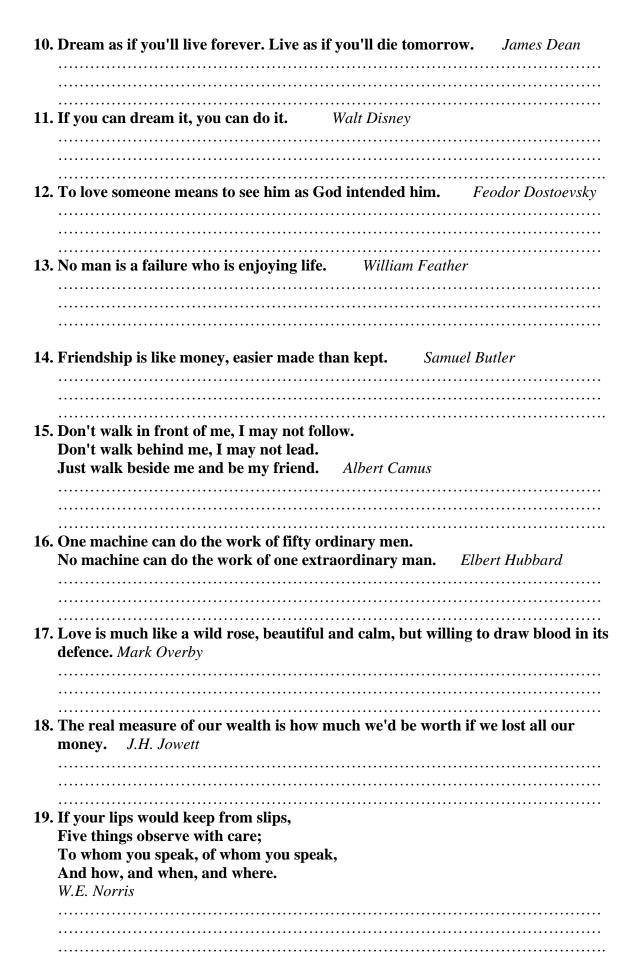
- tease or fool someone

The man is playing a cat and mouse game with the company about his plans.

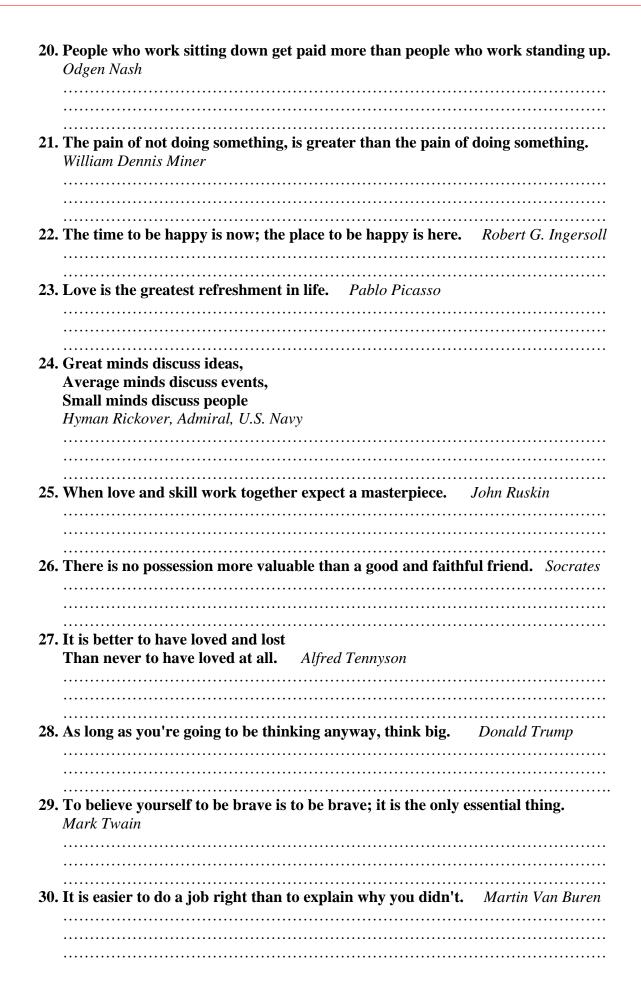


# Write the Turkish equivalents of the following quotes and then write your ideas about them. 1. Beauty is only skin deep, and the world is full of thin skinned people. Richard Armour ..... ..... ..... 2. Those who bring sunshine to the lives of others cannot keep it from themselves. James Barrie ..... ..... 3. When one door closes another one opens; but we so often look so long and so regretfully upon the closed door, that we do not see the ones which open for us. Alexander Graham Bell ..... ..... ..... 4. It is easier to forgive an enemy than to forgive a friend. William Blake ..... ..... ..... 5. You can discover what your enemy fears most by observing the means he uses to frighten you. Eric Hoffer ..... ..... ..... 6. When a friend is in trouble, don't annoy him by asking if there is anything you can do. Think up something appropriate and do it. Edgar Watson Howe ..... ..... ..... 7. True friendship is like sound health; the value of it is seldom known until it be Charles Caleb Colton lost. ..... ..... 8. The first half of our lives are ruined by our parents, and the second half by our children. Clarence Darrow ..... ..... ..... 9. I can't change the direction of the wind, but I can adjust my sails to always reach my destination. Jimmy Dean ..... .....









<b>31. Nothing is too small to know, and nothing is too big to attempt.</b> <i>William Van Horne</i>
<b>32. People come into your life for a reason, a season, or a lifetime.</b> <b>When you figure out which it is you'll know exactly what to do.</b> <i>Michelle Vent</i>
<b>33. No man is rich enough to buy back his past.</b> Oscar Wilde
<b>34. Give me the children until they are seven and anyone may have them afterware</b> <i>St. Francis Xavier</i>
<b>35. Education is not the filling of a pail, but the lighting of a fire.</b> <i>William Butler Ye</i>
Det Dutention is not the mining of a pair, but the righting of a meet re
<b>36. There are too many people, and too few human beings.</b> <i>Robert Zand</i>
<b>37. Those who love deeply never grown old; they may die of old age, but they die</b> <b>young.</b> — <i>Arthur Wing Pinero</i>
38. If you love something, let it go. If it comes back it's yours. If it doesn't, it never really was in the first place. – Anonymous
<b>39. A successful marriage requires falling in love many times, always with the same person.</b> <i>~Mignon McLaughlin</i>
40. Motivation is like food for the brain. You cannot get enough in one sitting. It
needs continual and regular top up's Peter Davies



•	King,
2. ''	<b>There was never a good war or a bad peace.''</b> Benjamin Franklin
•	
3. ''	<b>The best way to destroy an enemy is to make him a friend.''</b> Abraham Lincol
•	
4. I	love you - those three words have my life in them. by Alexandrea to Nicholas I
•	
5. '	<b>Only a life lived for others is worth living.</b> " Albert Einstein.
	'Live, let live, and help live'' Ralph Waldo Emerson
•	
7. '	<b>'Kindness gives birth to kindness.''</b> Sophocles.
•	
•	
8. '	Give help rather than advice." Luc de Vauvenargues
•	
•	
-	
9. '	'I wish you all the joy that you can wish.'' William Shakespeare
•	
•	
	Happiness is not something you postpone for the future; it is something you           lesign for the present Jim Rohn



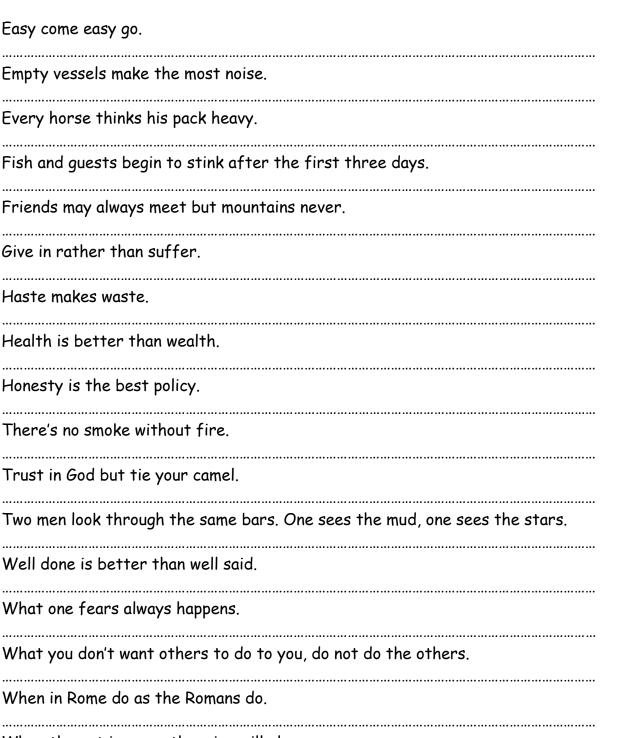
# **PROVERBS**

# Write the Turkish equivalents of the following proverbs.

A bad workman always blames his tools.
A bird in the hands worth two in the bush.
A cock crows on his own dunghill.
A drowning man will catch a straw.
A false friend and a shadow appear only when the sun shines.
A friend in need is a friend indeed.
A living dog is better than a dead lion.
A quiet baby gets no suck.
A rolling stone gathers no moss.
After a storm comes a calm.
All roads lead to Rome
All that glitters is not gold.
Clothes do not make the man.
Coming events cast their shadows before.
Cut your coat according to your cloth.
Diamond cuts diamond.
Do not change horse in midstream.
Don't judge a book by its cover.
Drink nothing without seeing it, sign nothing without reading it







Haste makes waste.

Health is better than wealth.

..... Honesty is the best policy.

There's no smoke without fire.

Trust in God but tie your camel.

Two men look through the same bars. One sees the mud, one sees the stars.

Well done is better than well said.

What one fears always happens.

.....

What you don't want others to do to you, do not do the others.

When in Rome do as the Romans do.

When the cat is away, the mice will play.

When you go to buy, use your eyes, not your ears.

..... Who pays the piper calls the tune.

\_\_\_\_\_ Words cut more than swords.

\_\_\_\_\_





# **CLASSIFIED IRREGULAR VERBS**

Cost	cost	cost	Pay	paid	paid
Cut	cut	cut	Make	made	made
Hit	hit	hit	Stand	stood	stood
Hurt	hurt	hurt	Understand	understood	understood
Let	let	let	Break	broke	broken
Put	put	put	Choose	chose	chosen
Shut	shut	shut			
			Speak	spoke	spoken
Lend	lent	lent	Steal	stole	stolen
Send	sent	sent	Wake	woke	woken
Spend	spent	spent	Drive	drove	driven
Build	built	built	Ride	rode	ridden
Burn	burnt	burnt	Rise	rose	risen
Learn	learnt	learnt	Write	wrote	written
Smell	smelt	smelt	Beat	beat	beaten
Lose	lost	lost	Bite	bit	bitten
Shoot	shot	shot	Hide	hid	hidden
Get	got	got	Eat	ate	eaten
Light	lit	lit	Fall	fell	fallen
Sit	sat	sat	Forget	forgot	forgotten
Keep	kept	kept	Give	gave	given
Sleep	slept	slept	See	saw	seen
Feel	felt	felt	Take	took	taken
Leave	left	left	Blow	blew	blown
Meet	met	met	Grow	grew	grown
Dream	dreamt	dreamt	Know	knew	known
Mean	meant	meant	Throw	threw	thrown
Bring	brought	brought	Fly	flew	flown
Buy	bought	bought	Draw	drew	drown
Fight	fought	fought	Show	showed	shown
Think	thought	thought	Begin	began	begun
Catch	caught	caught	Drink	drank	drunk
Teach	taught	taught	Swim	swam	swum
Sell	sold	sold	Ring	rang	rung
Tell	told	told	Sing	sang	sung
Find	found	found	Run	ran	run
Have	had	had	Come	came	come
Hear	heard	heard	Become	became	become
Hold	held	held			
Read*	read	read			
Say	said	said			

\* Pronunciation is different.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
Be	was/were	been
Beat	beat	beaten
Become	became	become
Begin	began	begun
Bite	bit	bitten
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built	built
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught	caught
Choose	chose	chosen
Come	came	come
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut
Do	did	done
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Fly	flew	flown
Forget	forgot	forgotten
Get	got	got
Give	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grow	grew	grown
Hang	hung	hung
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Hide	hid	hidden
Hit	hit	hit
Hold	held	held
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Know	knew	known
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent

# **IRREGULAR VERBS**

The following verbs can be regular or irregular. Infinitive Past Simple / Past Participle

minuve	I ast Shiple / I ast I atterpte
Burn	burned or burnt
Dream	dreamed or dreamt

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
Let	let	let
Lie	lay	lain
Light	lit	lit
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
Pay	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Read*	read	read
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
Run	ran	run
Say	said	said
See	saw	seen
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Shine	shone	shone
Shoot	shot	shot
Show	showed	shown
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang	sung
Sit	sat	sat
Sleep	slept	slept
Speak	spoke	spoken
Spend	spent	spent
Stand	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Swim	swam	swum
Take	took	taken
Teach	taught	taught
Tear	tore	torn
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Throw	threw	thrown
	understood	understood
Wake	woke	woken
Wear	wore	worn
Win	won	won
Write	wrote	written

# \* Pronunciation is different.

Infinitive	Past Simple / Past Participle
Learn	learned or learnt
Smell	smelled or smelt





#### AHŞAP TEKNOLOJİSİ

AHŞAP BOYAMA KURSU AHŞAP YAKMA TEKNİĞİ KURSU AİLE EĞİTİMİ KURSU

BAHÇECİLİK ARICILIK KURSU BAHÇECİLİK KURSU

#### **BİLİŞİM TEKNOLOJİLERİ**

AUTOCAD KURSU BİLGİSAYAR KULLANIMI-İŞLETMENLİĞİ KURSU BİLGİSAYARDA DOKÜMAN HAZIRLAMA OFİS PROGRAMLARI KULLANIMI KURSU MEB ONAYLI / KPSS İÇİN MOBİL PROGRAMLAMA (ANDROİD-İOS) KURSU WEB TASARIM KURSU

#### **BÜRO YÖNETİMİ VE SEKRETERLİK**

YÖNETİCİ ASİSTANLIĞI VE BÜRO YÖNETİMİ KURSU

CAN VE MAL GÜVENLİĞİ AFET BİLİNCİ EĞİTİMİ KURSU

CILT BAKIM HIZMETLERI CILT BAKIMI/MAKYAJ KURSU

#### **ÇOCUK GELİŞİMİ**

0-72 AY ÇOCÜK GELİŞİMİ KURSU 0-72 AY ÇOCUKLARI İÇİN OYUN VE OYUNCAK KURSU HAMİLELİK VE BEBEK BAKIMI KURSU ÖZEL EĞİTİM GEBEKTİREN BİREYLER İÇİN AİLE

ÖZEL EĞİTİM GEREKTİREN BİREYLER İÇİN AİLE DESTEK PROGRAMI KURSU

#### DENIZCILIK

SUDA CANLI KALMA VE SUDA CAN KURTARMA KURSU

#### EL SANATLARI

FİLOGRAFİ KURSU GÜMÜŞ İŞLEMECİLİĞİ-KUYUMCULUK-KAZAZİYE KURSU KEÇE AKSESUARLARI YAPIMI KÖSELE ÇANTA YAPMA KURSU NAKIŞ (EL) KURSU NAKIŞ (MAKİNE)KURSU ŞİŞ VE TIĞ ÖRÜCÜLÜĞÜ KURSU QUİLLİNG KAĞIT RÖLYEF KURSU

#### **GİYİM ÜRETİM TEKNOLOJİLERİ**

GİYİM KURSU MODELİSTLİK-STİLİSTLİK KURSU HASTA VE YAŞLI HİZMETLERİ ÖZ BAKIMA DESTEK ELEMANI

#### **GRAFİK ve FOTOĞRAF**

BİLGİSAYAR DESTEKLİ REKLAM VE TASARIM KURSU FOTOĞRAFÇILIK KURSU FOTOGRAFÇILAR İÇİN PHOTOSHOP KURSU ÜÇ BOYUTLU GRAFİK ANİMASYON 3DSMAX KURSU GRAFİK TASARIM KURSU

ADLİ KALEM İŞLERİ

# EĞİTİMLERİMİZ

İTFAİYECİLİK VE YANGIN GÜVENLİĞİ

ORMAN VE KIRSAL ALAN YANGINLARINA MÜDAHALE KURSU YANGIN EĞİTİMİ KURSU

#### KONAKLAMA VE SEYAHAT HİZMETLERİ HAVUZ SUYU OPERATÖRLÜĞÜ KURSU

#### **KİŞİSEL GELİŞİM**

**ARDUINO KURSU** AVCI EĞİTİMİ KURSU BAĞIMLILIKLA MÜCADELE EĞİTİMİ KURSU BRAİLLE ALFABESİ ÖĞRETİMİ KURSU **CENAZE YIKAMA KURSU GIRIŞİMCİLİK KURSU** GÖRGÜ KURALLARI KURSUDİKSİYON KURSU DESTEKLEME VE YETİŞTİRME KURSU (LİSE MEZUNLARINA YÖNELİK ÜNİVERSİTEYE HAZIRLIK KURSU) DGS (DİKEY GEÇİŞ SINAVI)KURSU **ETKILI VE HIZLI OKUMA KURSU** EVDE BASIT ONARIMLAR KURSU **KPSS LİSE KURSU KPSS ÖN LİSANS KURSU** HIZLI KLAVYE KULLANIM KURSU **ILK YARDIM KURSU** İŞ GÜVENLİĞİ VE İŞÇİ SAĞLIĞI KURSU İŞARET DİLİ KURSU **ILETİŞİM KURSU** KALORIFER ATEŞLEYİCİ (KATI-SIVI-GAZ) KURSU KAYNAKÇILIK KÜRSÜ KUAFÖRLÜK KURSU KUR'AN-I KERİM KURSU KURBAN KESİMİ KURSU LIDERLIK EĞITIMI KURSU MANTAR YETİŞTİRİCİLİĞİ KURSU MODEL UÇAK YAPIMI KURSU MOTORLU TAŞIT SÜRÜCÜLERİ SINAV SORUMLU OLTA DONANIMI ve BALIK AVCILIĞI KURSU **OSMANLICA KURSU** SU KABAĞI SÜSLEMECİLİĞİ KURSU SU KURSU(SADECE MEB PERSONELİ BAŞVURA-**BİLİR**) **OKÇULUK KURSU** TULUM EĞİTİMİ KURSU

MUHASEBE VE FINANSMAN

MUHASEBE(Bİ<mark>LGİ</mark>SAYAR DESTEKLİ) KURSU MUHASEBE (ÖN-TEMEL) KURSU

#### MÜZİK VE GÖSTERİ SANATLARI

BAĞLAMA KURSU DRAMA KURSU GİTAR KURSU KEMENÇE KURSU MODERN DANSLAR KURSU MÜZİK KURSU (ÇOCUKLAR İÇİN) PİYANO KURSU TÜRK HALK MÜZİĞİ KOROSU TÜRK HALK OYUNLARI KURSU TÜRK HALK OYUNLARI YÖRE OYUNLARI ÖĞRETİCİLİĞİ KURSU TÜRK SANAT MÜZİĞİ TEMEL EĞİTİMİ KURSU UYGULAMALI TİYATRO KURSU

#### OKUMA YAZMA

OKUMA YAZMA 1.KADEME KURSU OKUMA YAZMA 2.KADEME KURSU

#### ÖĞRETMENLİK VE ÖĞRETİM

EĞİTİCİNİN EĞİTİMİ KURSU MOTORLU TAŞITLAR DİREKSİYON USTA ÖĞRETİ-CILİĞİ KURSU MOTORLU TAŞITLAR TRAFİK VE ÇEVRE USTA ÖĞRETICİLİĞİ KURSU ÖĞRETMENLER İÇİN TİYATRO KURSU SINIF ÖĞRETMENLERİNE YÖNELİK ENSTRÜMAN KURSU USTA ÖĞRETİCİ ORYANTASYON EĞİTİMİ KURSU ÜÇRETLİ ÖĞRETMENLER İÇİN ÖZEL EĞİTİM UYGULAMALARI KURSU

#### PAZARLAMA VE PERAKENDE

EMLAK DANIŞMANLIĞI KURSU SATIŞ ELEMANI KURSU

#### SANAT VE TASARIM

EBRU KURSU HÜSN-İ HAT KURSU İĞNE OYASI KURSU İPEK BÖCEĞİ KOZASINDAN ÇİÇEK YAPIMI RESİM KURSU SEDEF KAKMA KURSU TAKI TASARIM KURSU TEZHİP KURSU

#### SERAMİK VE CAM TEKNOLOJİSİ

CAM İŞLEMECİLİĞİ -YARI OTOMATİK CAM ŞEKİLLENDİRİCİLİĞİ TEKNOLOJİSİ KURSU ÇİNİCİ-TAHRİRCİ KURSU SERAMİK KURSU

#### SPOR

ATLETİZM KURSU FUTBOL KURSU MUAY THAI KURSU MASA TENİSİ KURSU STEP-AEROBİK KURSU TEKVANDO KURSU VOLEYBOL KURSU YÜZME KURSU

#### **ULAŞTIRMA HİZMETLERİ**

OKUL SERVİS ARAÇ SÜRÜCÜLERİ EĞİTİMİ KURSU OKUL TAŞITLARI REHBER PERSONEL EĞİTİMİ

#### YABANCI DİLLER

ALMANCA	A1 - A2
ARAPÇA	A1 - A2
ÇİNCE	A1 - A2
FRANSIZCA	A1 - A2
INGILIZCE	A1 - A2
INGILIZCE	B-1
RUSÇA	A1 - A2

YABANCILAR IÇİN A-1 SEVİYE TÜRKÇE ÖĞRETİMİ KURSU YABANCILAR IÇİN A-2 SEVİYE TÜRKÇE ÖĞRETİMİ KURSU YABANCILAR IÇİN B-1 SEVİYE TÜRKÇE ÖĞRETİMİ KURSU

YİYECEK VE İÇECEK HİZMETLERİ AŞÇILIK KURSU PASTACILIK KURSU

# TUZLA HALK EĞİTİMİ MERKEZİ









# KURS KAYIT İÇİN: tuzlahem.meb.k12.tr



307091@meb.k12.tr



tuzlahalkegitimimerkezi



**TuzlaHEM** 



# İLETİŞİM

Evliya Çelebi Mah. Gündoğdu Sok. No:3 Tuzla/İSTANBUL (0216) 395 77 43